

**МИНИСТЕРСТВО ЗДРАВООХРАНЕНИЯ РЕСПУБЛИКИ БЕЛАРУСЬ  
БЕЛОРУССКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ МЕДИЦИНСКИЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ  
КАФЕДРА ЛАТИНСКОГО ЯЗЫКА**

**А. З. ЦИСЫК**

# **ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК**

## **THE LATIN LANGUAGE**

Допущено Министерством образования Республики Беларусь  
в качестве учебного пособия для англоязычных иностранных студентов  
высших медицинских учебных заведений



Минск БГМУ 2010

УДК 811.124 (811.111) (075.8)  
ББК 81.2 (Лат) (81.2 Англ – 923)  
Ц 73

Рецензенты: каф. классической филологии Белорусского государственного университета (зав. каф. канд. филол. наук, доц. Г. И. Шевченко); зав. каф. иностранных языков Гродненского государственного медицинского университета, канд. филол. наук, доц. Д. К. Кондратьев

Перевод на английский язык А. З. Цисыка

**Цисык, А. З.**

Ц 73 Латинский язык = The Latin Language : учеб. пособие / А. З. Цисык ; пер. на англ. яз. А. З. Цисык. – Минск : БГМУ, 2010. – 212 с.

ISBN 978–985–528–203–8.

Издание состоит из фонетического раздела и трех основных разделов материалов — анатомического, фармацевтического и клинического. Каждый из этих разделов содержит теоретическую и практическую части, латинско-английский и английско-латинский словарь. С эквивалентами на английском языке представлены профессиональные медицинские выражения, латинские афоризмы и текст международного студенческого гимна «Гаудеамус».

Предназначено для иностранных студентов лечебного, педиатрического и других факультетов медицинских вузов, изучающих дисциплину «Латинский язык» на английском языке.

УДК 811.124 (811.111) (075.8)  
ББК 81.2 (Лат) (81.2 Англ – 923)

---

Учебное издание

**Цисык Андрей Зиновьевич**

**ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК  
The Latin Language**

Учебное пособие на английском языке

Ответственный за выпуск А. З. Цисык

В авторской редакции

Компьютерный набор Е. А. Чижик, Е. С. Швайко

Компьютерная верстка Н. М. Федорцовой

Подписано в печать 23.04.10. Формат 60×84/16. Бумага писчая «Снегурочка».

Печать офсетная. Гарнитура «Times».

Усл. печ. л. 12,32. Уч.-изд. л. 9,91. Тираж 150 экз. Заказ 529.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение:

учреждение образования «Белорусский государственный медицинский университет».

ЛИ № 02330/0494330 от 16.03.2009.

ЛП № 02330/0150484 от 25.02.2009.

Ул. Ленинградская, 6, 220006, Минск.

**ISBN 978–985–528–203–8**

© Оформление. Белорусский государственный  
медицинский университет, 2010

## PREFACE

This manual is meant for English-speaking students of medical universities of the Republic of Belarus. Its structure corresponds to the syllabus presented in the State Educational Standard Plan for the subject “The Latin Language” taught in the medical universities. The manual has been composed in accordance with generally accepted patterns expressed in well-known manuals and textbooks of Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology.

The manual is divided into four parts — phonetics, the anatomical part with the main grammar rules, the pharmaceutical part and the clinical one.

Every real lesson, as it is generally known, has a uniform structure: checking the home task (orally and in writing), some explanation of a new topic, students’ work with exercises. The manual contains all necessary components for this work — grammar and terminological material, as well as exercises. In the latter, words are given in alphabetical order, and every lesson is provided with Latin-English and English-Latin glossaries. Such a distribution of educational material should help students in their work with exercises.

According to high school norms of studying linguistic subjects, students are to learn 30–40 new words at every lesson, although this word memorizing can be managed naturally only due to a strenuous efforts to do the homework. But then, this work is constantly facilitated by lexical affinity of equivalent words in Latin and English.

The main attention is paid to the anatomical and clinical terms, as namely these terms are and will be mainly needed of all wanted in daily medical practice of foreign students. That is why the pharmaceutical part of the manual is presented quite concisely. As to clinical terms, on the basis of well-known English medical dictionaries we sought to give the scientific definition of each terminological unit. Such an introduction into professional terminology judging by the students’ reaction has always been of great interest to them.

The subject “Medical Latin” is mastered and controlled chiefly in written form. So both proper spelling and grammar arrangement are of great value as spoken Latin is very simple. That’s why control tests at every lesson as well as summing up are performed only in written form.

The students should bear in mind, that only systematic work on the topic and vocabulary of every lesson on their own can result in success.

**The author expresses his sincere acknowledgement to the senior tutor of the Department of Foreign Languages of the Belarusian State Medical University Novitskaja Tatiana for her perpetual assistance in the work at the manual.**

## INTRODUCTION TO THE SUBJECT

The subject you are going to study is the Latin Language. To some point, this name is relative, because nowadays there are no people speaking Latin. From the school course of world history you can remember, that many centuries ago, where nowadays Italy is, there was the Roman Empire. The Roman state which included many lands and people existed till 464 A.D. And initially, Rome was a small town, founded by an Italian tribe in 753 B.C. and Latin was its native language. Gradually, century after century, Rome became the most powerful state of the Mediterranean and Latin was widespread and acknowledged.

An event of tremendous historical importance for both Rome and the future of European culture was the Roman conquest of Greece, the motherland of European culture and science. The Greek physician Hippocrates is namely considered to be the founder of European scientific medicine. Hippocrates and other Greek physicians made a great contribution into the development of medicine, that's why Greek medicine was extremely popular and prestigious among the population of the Mediterranean area. For this reason, Greek medical terms were borrowed into Latin and came into use in different countries. So originally the European medical terminology was formed on the basis of Greek and Latin words.

In the new history of Europe, beginning with the Roman state's collapse, the Latin language was used for 1000 years as the language of state establishments, Catholic religion, education and science, especially at universities founded in the 12th century. Every university would have a medical faculty. Diplomas and theses as well as the process of education itself were in Latin. As to medicine, Latin became the international professional language of physicians. Medical terms rooting from Latin and Greek are presented in any European language as borrowings. What's more, there exist lists of biological and medical terms, forming the so-called Nomenclatures, approved at the International Congresses of scientists — anatomical, histological, microbiological etc. Latin terms of those nomenclatures are used in education and scientific literature. That's why future doctors must study fundamentals of international medical terminology, based on Latin grammar and Latin and Greek word building elements (roots, stems and affixes).

Among modern European languages English, and, particularly, medical English, contains a great number of Latin and latinized Greek words. It becomes evident when comparing medical glossaries of Latin and English. To prove this compare some medical terms in Latin and English.

<b>Latin anatomical terms</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
abdomen	abdomen
alaris	alar
canalis	canal
cardiacus	cardiac
cavitas	cavity
lobus	lobe
longus	long
tonsilla	tonsil
vomer	vomer

<b>Latin pharmaceutical terms</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
acidum	acid
Acidum aceticum	acetic acid
aether	ether
cortex	cortex
dilutus	diluted
herba	herb
Mentha	mint
pilula	pill
tinctura	tincture

<b>Latin clinical terms</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
adenitis	adenitis	inflammation of gland
bradyphagia	bradyphagia	slowing of swallowing
cancerophobia	cancerophobia	fear of cancer
cholecystogramma	cholecystogram	results of gallbladder X-ray examination
haematuria	hematuria	blood in the urine
lipuria	lipuria	lipid excretion by urine
otogenus	otogenic	developing from the ear
tachycardia	tachycardia	abnormally fast heart rate
trichalgia	trichalgia	feeling of pain in the hair

As we see, in clinical terminology using Latin terms is particularly preferable, because one Latin word can change the whole group of English words, expressing some pathological phenomenon.

The proximity of medical terms in Latin and English can be explained very simply: it is well known, that English medical terminology developed from Medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed ancient Latin and Greek medical lexical units. Both Latin and ancient Greek are an inexhaustible source for a new term building, and this process keeps on going. Everybody striving to become a doctor must master Latin and fundamentals of international medical Terminology.

The course of Latin at the Medical University you are going to study consists of 3 main parts, which correspond to the main groups of medical

terminology: anatomical (and partly histological), pharmaceutical and clinical ones. This material is divided into 2 academic terms (semesters); each lesson is once a week. The first term is devoted to learning phonetic and main grammar rules of Latin anatomical terminology. During the second term the students get acquainted with the fundamentals of pharmaceutical and clinical terminology. Each new lesson includes your teacher's explanation of the topic of the lesson, but the main bulk of work for you is your home task. A specific feature of studying during both terms is written control of checking home task preparation at every lesson. Besides this regular test control, 3 written tests (for 45 and 90 minutes) are provided. The purpose of the first one is to control the knowledge of about 50 % of the course material, and that of the second one — mastering the entire material of each part of the course. There exist uniform (for all groups and teachers) rules of the control assessment and you will be acquainted with them. So, at every lesson, you will first work orally, checking the home task with your teacher, and then your knowledge will be controlled in written form (while books and notebooks are closed). The principal way to this knowledge is your own persistent work with your textbook memorizing Latin words and rules of its grammar. And, without doubt, every student can succeed in learning Latin and fundamentals of medical terminology, if his or her efforts are steady and diligent.

**PART I**  
**PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION**

**Lesson 1**  
**The latin alphabet. The pronunciation of vowels,  
consonants and letter combinations**

**§ 1. LATIN ALPHABET**

The Latin alphabet includes 25 letters.

Letters	Names	Latin Pronunciation	Latin examples and their transcription	English equivalents
A a	a [ʌ]	[a]	vas [vʌs]	vessel
B b	be [be]	[b]	bulbus [bú:lbus]	bulb
C c	tse [tse]	[ts] [k]	coccyx [kó:ktsiks]	coccyx, coccygeal bone
D d	de [de]	[d]	dens [dens]	tooth
E e	e [e]	[e]	vertebra [vé:rtebrʌ]	vertebra
F f	ef [ef]	[f]	frontalis [frontā:lis]	frontal
G g	ge [ge]	[g]	genu [gé:nu]	knee
H h	ha [hʌ]	[h like English heart, here]	hepar [hé:pʌr]	liver
I i	i [i]	[i]	incisura [incizú:rʌ]	incisure
J j	yot [yot]	[j] like English yes, you	jugularis [yuguláris]	jugular
K k	ka [kʌ]	[k]	skeleton [ské:leton]	skeleton
L l	el [el]	l [as in English life, love]	cellula [tsé:llulʌ]	cell
M m	em [em]	[m]	mors [mors]	death
N n	en [en]	[n]	nodus [nó:dus]	node
O o	o [o]	[o]	coronarius [coronárius]	coronary
P p	pe [pe]	[p]	palpebra [pálpebrʌ]	eyelid
Q q	ku [ku]	[kv] together with vowel <b>u</b> and vowel <b>a</b> , <b>e</b> , <b>i</b> , <b>o</b> , <b>u</b> after <b>u</b>	Quercus [kvé:rkus] quartus [kvá:rtus]	oak fourth
R r	er [er]	[r]	renalis [rená:lis]	renal
S s	es [es]	[s] [z]	sinus [sí:nus] incisura [intsizú:rʌ]	sinus, hollow incisure
T t	te [te]	[t] [ts]	tibia [tí:biʌ] articulatio [artikulá:tsio]	tibia, shine-bone articulation, joint
U u	u [u]	u	succus [sú:kkus]	juice
V v	ve [ve]	v	valva [vá:lvʌ]	valve
X x	iks [iks]	ks	dexter [dé:kster]	right, right-hand
Y y	iphsilon [ípsilon]	i	gyrus [gí:rus]	gyrus, convolution
Z z	zeta	z	zygomaticus	zygomatic

	[zétΛ]		[zigomátikus]	
--	--------	--	---------------	--

The last two letters, borrowed by Romans from Greek alphabet, are used, as a rule, in the words of Greek origin.

## § 2. DIVISION OF LATIN SOUNDS

Six letters of the alphabet (a, e, i, o, u, y) correspond to vowels and nineteen (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z) denote consonants.

## § 3. PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS

Vowels in Latin, except “y”, sound practically the same, as the sounds of their names in the alphabet (see above). So, the letter “a” sounds [a], the letter e — sounds [e] and so on. One may add, that the stressed vowel corresponds in pronunciation to a long one in English, compare:

cavitas [cá:vitΛs] — cavity  
 apertura [Λpertú:rΛ] — aperture, opening  
 venosus [venó:zus] — venous  
 tonsilla [tonsí:lΛ] — tonsil

The letter “y” (ípsilon) sounds as the Latin letter “i” (that’s why the Frenchmen call y “igrek”, i. e. “the Greek “i”):

tympanum [tí:mpanum] — drum

All the above given examples also indicate, that Latin vowels don’t practically change their sound quality in different syllables. But the vowel “i” placed before the vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” when making a common syllable with them, changes its sound characteristics: now it sounds similar to the English vowel “y” in the *yard*, *yours*, *yourself*, *youthful*, let’s compare:

maialis [mΛjá:lis] — referring to May  
 ieiumum [jejú:num] — jejunum  
 major [má:jor] — greater

As in such cases the letter “i” sounds different compared to the vowel “i”, the scientists in the XVI century decided to introduce a new letter **j** into the Latin alphabet, so as to substitute the vowel “i”: majalis, jejunum, major and so on. It is common to use the letter “j” in medical and biological terms. Let’s, however, note that in the terms of the Greek origin the vowel “i” never makes a syllable with the subsequent vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” and therefore the letter j cannot be used:

iater [iá:ter] physician, commonly geriater, paediater, psychiater, phthisiater and so on — these terms will be discussed in the clinical part of our course. We can also mention the noun Iodum [iú:dum] — iodine (Latin names of chemical elements are to be written with capital letters).

## § 4. PRONUNCIATION OF TWO VOWEL COMBINATION



Two vowels following each other can form the so-called diphthong that is pronounced as a combination of two vowels pronounced in one syllable.

So **au** [au] is pronounced as in the English words *down*, *sound*, *south*, *compound* and so on:

auris [á:ris] — ear, caudalis [kaudá:lis] — caudal, trauma [tráuma] — injury, wound.

**Eu** [eu] has no analogue in English, so its pronunciation must be learnt by the spelling memorizing. However, you should pay attention to the letter combination “**eu**” at the end of words, where it doesn’t make a diphthong and each vowel is pronounced separately:

sigmoideus [sigmoí:deus] — sigmoid

corpus luteum [kó:rpus lú:teum] — corpus luteum (yellow body)

Two vowels can also form a digraph, which sounds like the Latin vowel “**e**”:

ae — [e] — costae [kó:ste] — ribs

oe — [e] — oedema [edé:mΛ] — swelling

If each vowel in such digraphs is to be pronounced separately, two dots are placed over the letter **e**:

aër [á:er] — air, Aloë (names of medical plants are to be written in Latin with the capital letter) [á:loe] — aloe.

## § 5. PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS

Consonants **b, d, f, h, k, m, n, p, q, s, t, v, x** are similar in pronouncing to English. The difference is that consonants **p, t, k** are not aspirated, as in English. Pronunciation of the rest consonants is to be explained.

The letter **Cc** before the vowels “**e**”, “**i**”, “**y**” and digraphs **ae, oe** is pronounced as [ts], but before the vowels “**a**”, “**o**”, “**u**” and consonants (except **h**) is pronounced as [k]:

cervicalis [tserviká:lis] — cervical

caecum [tsé:kum] — caecum

coccyx [kó:ktsiks] — coccyx, cockerel bone

The letter **Gg** is always pronounced like [g] in English *get, glass, disguise*:

gaster [gá:ster] — stomach

genu [gé:nu] — knee

vagina [vΛgí:nΛ] — vagina

The letter **Hh** is pronounced approximately as h in English:

homo [hó:mo] — man

hyoideus [hioí:deus] — sublingual

The letter **Ll** is pronounced in some way softer than in English and is palatalized both before vowels and consonants (as in the pronunciation of such English words as **look** and **live**):

albus [á:lbus] — white

cellula [tsé:llulΛ] — cell

palatinus [pʌlʌtínus] — palatine

pyloricus [piló:rikus] — pyloric

The letter **Rr** in Latin is pronounced always clearly and distinctly not as the English **Rr** [a:]

dexter [dé:xter] — right

posterior [posté:rior] — back

renalis [rená:lis] — renal

The letter **Ss** between two vowels is pronounced like [z], in other cases — as [s]:

basis [bá:zis] — base

sinus [sí:nus] — sinus, hollow

The letter **Tt** is commonly pronounced as [t] without aspiration: tinctura [tinktú:rʌ] — tincture. But in such a letter combination, where **i** follows **t** plus some other vowel, **t** is pronounced as [ts]:

articulatio [artikulá:tsio] — joint

protuberantia [protuberá:ntsia] — protuberance

There is, however, an exception from this last rule: if before the combination **ti** + vowel the consonants “**s**” or “**x**” are placed, then the pronunciation of **ti** is [ti]:

digestio [digé:stio] — digestion

ostium [ó:stium] — orifice.

The letter **Zz** is pronounced as [z]:

zona [zó:nʌ] — zone

horizontalis [horizontá:lis] — horizontal

But in two cases we pronounce this letter as [ts]: influenza [influé:ntsʌ] — grippus, influenza and Zincum [tsí:nkum] — zink.

## § 6. PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANT COMBINATIONS

Two consonants can form a digraph, which is pronounced as a consonant:

**ch** is pronounced as [kh]:

chorda [khó:rdʌ] — cord

charta [khá:rtʌ] — paper

**ph** is pronounced as [f]:

lymphaticus [limfá:ticus] — lymphatic

pharynx [fa:rinks] — pharynx

**rh** is pronounced as [r]:

rhinorrhagia [rinoragí:a] — rhinorrhagia (nasal bleeding)

rhomboideus [romboí:deus] — rhomboid

**th** is pronounced as [t]:

thorax [tó:raks] — chest

labyrinthus [lʌbirí:ntus] — labyrinth

The combination of three consonants **sch** is pronounced as [skh]:

schema [skhé:mΛ] — scheme  
ischiadicus [iskhiá:dikus] — sciatic

### § 7. PRONUNCIATION OF SOME LETTER COMBINATIONS

The letter combination **ngu** is pronounced as [ngv], if the vowel **u** is followed by one of the vowels a, e, i, u:

lingua [lí:ngvΛ] — tongue, language  
unguentum [ungvé:ntum] — ointment  
unguis [ú:ngvis] — nail

But if a consonant follows “**u**”, then **ngu** is pronounced as [ngu]:

angulus [á:ngulus] — angle  
lingula [lí:ngulΛ] — lingula, little tongue

The letter combination **qu** with the following vowel (**a, e, i, o, u**) is pronounced as [kv] with a subsequent vowel:

squamosus [skvamó:zus] — squamosal  
aqueductus [akvedú:tus] — aqueduct  
Quercus [kvé:rkus] — oak

### § 8. EXERCISES

1. *Read the following words paying special attention to the vowel pronunciation:*

forámen (opening), ligaméntum (ligament), dúctus (duct), interglobuláris (interglobular), longitudinális (longitudinal), massetéricus (masticatory, chewing), pylóricus (pyloric), synoviális (synovial), tympánicus (tympanic), siníster (left), zygomáticus (zygomatic)

2. *Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letter c:*

cáput (head), cervicális (cervical), cérebrum (brain), cútis (skin), Ácidum acéticum (acetic acid), síccus (dry), fácies (face, surface), coccygéus (coccygeal), coerúleus (blue), caécum (caecum), búccae (cheeks), carcinóma (cancer), sáccus lacrimális (lacrimal sac)

3. *Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letters g and q:*

nérvus hypoglóssus (hypoglossal nerve), gánglion pterygopalatínium (pterygopalatine ganglion), rámi gingiváles (gingival branches), gánglion geniculátum (geniculate ganglion), gýrus anguláris (angular gyrus), húmor aquósus (aqueous humor), aquedúctus vestibuli (vestibular aqueduct), cósta quinta (fifth rib), márgo squamósus (squamosal border)

4. *Read correctly the following words, paying special attention to the consonants j, s and t:*

ála májor (major wing), flexúra duodenojejunális (duodenojejunal flexure), júga alveolária (alveolar yokes), articulátio compósita (complex joint), óstium

atrioventriculáre dextrum (right atrioventricular orifice), incisúra juguláris (jugular notch), segméntum basále antérius (anterior basal segment), básiis óssis sácri (base of sacrum), míxtio pro potióne (mixture for drinking).

5. *Read correctly the following words paying attention to combinations of vowels:*

cóstae spúriæ (false ribs), forámen caécum línguae (caecum foramen of tongue), Óleum Eucalýpti (eucalyptus oil), oedéma larýngis (edema of larynx), nérvus auriculáris (auricular nerve), aponeurósis línguae (lingual aponeurosis), céllulae haematopoéticæ (hematogenic cells), glándulae oesophagææ (oesophageal glands), pneumonía mígrans (migratory pneumonia).

6. *Read attentively the following words with vowel and consonant combinations:*

nérvus ischiádicus (sciatic nerve), Strophanthínium (strophanthin), Synthomycínium (synthomycin), fébris haemorrhágica (hemorrhagic fever), ráphe pharýngis (pharyngeal raphe), ásthma bronchiále (bronchial asthma), vértebrae thorácicæ (thoracic vertebrae), unguéntum ophthálmicum (ophthalmic ointment), labyrínthus ethmoidális (ethmoidal labyrinth), Methylénium coeruleum (blue methylen), rhizóma Glycyrrhízæ (rhizome of licorice), Schizándra chinénsis (chinense magnolia vine), sectiónes hypothálami (sections of hypothalamus), dúctus cholédochus (common bile duct), trúnCUS brachiocephálicus (brachiocephalis trunk), distántia trochantérica (trochanteric distance), hemisphérium cerebéli (hemisphere of cerebellum), tubérculum pharyngéum (pharyngeal tubercle), véna saphéna (saphenous vein), cirrhósis hépatis (biliary cirrhosis), typhus abdominális (abdominal typhus), nephrolithíasis chrónica (chronic nephrolithiasis), foétor ex óre seu halitósis (fetid or offensive breath or halitosis)

## Lesson 2

### Accent rules

#### § 9. ACCENT IN THE WORDS CONSISTING OF TWO SYLLABLES

If a word consists of two syllable, there is always only one stress: the first syllable is stressed:

cós-ta, lá-rynx, nér-vus

#### § 10. ACCENT IN POLYSYLLABIC WORDS. LENGTH AND BREVIDY OF THE SECOND END SYLLABLE

In polysyllabic words consisting of three and more syllables, the second or third syllables from the end of the word can be stressed. The stress depends on the length or brevity of the second word end syllable: if it is long, it is stressed, if it is short, it cannot be stressed and then the third word end syllable is stressed.

The length and brevity of the second syllable and particularly in textbooks are usually marked by special signs: a short line is placed over the vowel if it is long, and a little arch — if it is short, compare:

ā – ǎ, ē – ě, ī – ĭ, ō – ǒ, ū – ů, y – ȳ.

So, if we find such words as forāmen, incisūra, hepatītis etc. in the dictionary, we can instantly determine, that such words have an accent on the second syllable from the end.

If in the dictionary we see such words as lamīna, encephālon, thoracīcus etc., we understand that the third syllable from the end must be stressed: lámīna, encéphalon, thorácicus.

Now, we should ask a crucial question: do we have to consult the dictionary about the quality of the second end syllable in every case or not? Fortunately, there exist some rules helping us to determine at once the length or brevity of the second end syllable, or more simply, of the second end vowel. First of all, there are suffixes containing vowels which are long or short by nature. Such suffixes called accordingly “long” or “short” can give us guidance about the length or brevity of the second end vowel.

### § 11. LONG SUFFIXES

Before listing the suffixes, one must notice that part of these suffixes is always long or short in all kinds of terminology — anatomical, pharmaceutical, clinical. As we are going to begin with anatomical terminology and continue studying it during the first semester, it would be proper to begin with the suffixes in anatomical terms.

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
-āl-	dentālis horizontālis	dental horizontal	encephālon (brain)
-ār-	articulāris mandibulāris	auricular mandibular	
-āt-	caudātus meātus	caudate passage	prostāta (prostate)
-īn-	palatīnus vagīna	palatine vagina, sheath	lamīna (lamine), femīna (women), retīna (retina), dens serotīnus (wisdom tooth), nervus trigemīnus (trigeminal nerve), termīnus (term)
-īv-	gingīva dens incisīvus	gingiva, gum incisor tooth	
-ōs-	aponeurōsis petrōsus	aponeurosis stony	
-ūr-	incisūra sutūra	incisure, slit or notch suture, line of junction	

### § 12. SHORT SUFFIXES

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions
----------	----------	---------------------	------------

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions
-iāc-	cardiācus coeliācus	cardiac coeliac	
-īc-	gastrīcus tunīca	gastric tunic, coat	vesīca ( bladder)
-ōl-	alveōlus foveōla	alveolus, sachet (tooth) foveola	
-ūl-	clavicūla mandibūla	clavicle mandible	

### § 13. SUFFIXES WITH SIMILAR QUALITY OF VOWEL IN ALL PARTS OF MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

As mentioned above, some suffixes can always be long or short in all parts of medical terminology, compare:

Suffix	Anatomical terms	Pharmaceutical terms	Clinical terms
-āt-	musculū levātor (levator muscle)	Aqua destillāta (distilled water)	Caries exacerbāta (caries exacerbated)
-ōs-	aponeurōsis (aponeurosis)	spirituōsus (spirituous)	erythrocytōsis (erythrocytosis, increased account of red blood cells in the blood)
-ūr-	junctūra (junction, juncture)	tinctūra (tincture)	fractūra (fracture)
-ūl-	angūlus (angle)	Betūla (birch)	furuncūlus (furuncle, boil)

### § 14. THE WAY OF ACCENT DETERMINATION WHEN THE SECOND END VOWEL IS NOT A PART OF A LONG OR A SHORT SUFFIX

In many words the second vowel from the word end is placed before a consonant, but this vowel is not a part of a common long or short suffix. In such cases we can determine its length or brevity controlling those peculiarities of the given word in the textbook vocabulary, compare:

forāmen (opening), orbīta (eye socket), skelēton (skeleton), suprēmū (highest), tuberosītas (tuberosity), urēter (ureter) and so on.

### § 15. SOME RULES OF SYLLABLE LENGTH DETERMINATION

In some cases we can determine the syllable length or brevity with the help of certain rules.

1. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before two or more consonants:

ligamētum (ligament)  
maxīlla (maxilla, upper jaw)  
sinīster (left)

But, when the vowel is short by nature (it is shown in the dictionary) and it is placed before two consonants, first of which being **b, c, d, g, p, t** and the second is **l** or **r**, this short vowel is pronounced short:

vertēbra (vertebra), cerēbrum (cerebrum), os triquētrum (triquetrum bone), multīplex (multiple). And when this vowel is long by nature, our rule is valid:

cicātrix (cicatrix, scar), psychiātri (psychiatrists), salūbris (curative).

2. The syllable is long, when it includes the diphthongs **au**, **eu** or **ae**, **oe**: amoeba (ameba), diaeta (diet), Althaea (althea).

3. The syllable is long when its vowel is placed before the consonants **x** or **z**:

reflēxus (reflex), Oryza (rise).

### § 16. THE RULES OF SYLLABLE BREVITY

1. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before another vowel:

linēa (line), superiōr (higher, upper)

cornūa (horns), Aluminīum (aluminium)

There are, however, two points of exceptions from this rule:

1) in some words of Greek origin the last but one vowel was formed from the diphthong **ae**, that's why it keeps the length of the syllable:

coccygaeus → coccygēus

peritonaeum → peritonēum

You have to memorize these exceptions:

perinēum (perineum, fork) peritonēum (peritoneum), trachēa (trachea), anconēus (anconeus muscle), coccygēus (coccygeal), esophagēus (esophageal), glutēus (gluteal), laryngēus (laryngeal), meningēus (meningeal), peronēus (peroneal, fibular), pharyngēus (pharyngeal).

2) in clinical terms with the ending **-ia** their vowel **i** and the syllable with it are stressed:

dyskinesía (dyskinesia, disturbance of movement), otoscopía (otoscopy, internal examination of the ear).

Some peculiarities of this exception will be discussed in the clinical part of our course.

2. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before the digraphs **ch**, **ph**, **rh**, **th**:

ductus choledōchus (bile duct)

nephrolīthus (renal calculus)

### § 17. EXERCISES

1. *Determine the stress syllable paying attention to the long and short suffixes:*

incisūra ethmoidālis (ethmoidal notch), tubercūlum jugulāre (jugular tubercle), lingūla sphenoidālis (sphenoidal lingula), semicanālis tubae auditīvae (canal for auditory tube), meātus acusticus externus (external acoustic meatus), lamīna perpendiculāris (perpendicular plate), facies palatīna (palatine surface), vesīca biliāris (gallbladder), glandūlae endocrīnae (endocrine glands), junctūrae

cingūli pelvīci (joints of pelvic girdle), urethra masculīna (male urethra), spina scapūlae (spine of scapula), intestīnum tenue (small intestine), alveolus dentālis (tooth socket), tunīca mucōsa linguae (mucous membrane of tongue), arcus dentālis mandibulāris (mandibular dental arcade), trigōnum submandibulāre (submandibular triangle)

2. *Write down and determine the stressed syllable paying attention to the natural length or brevity of the last but one vowel:*

tubercūlum anterius (anterior tubercle), incisūrae costāles (costal slits), vertēbra thoracīca (thoracic vertebra), ductus choledōchus (bile duct), forāmen apīcis radīcis dentis (apical foramen of the root of the tooth), vesīca urinaria (urinary bladder), Oleum Ricīni (castor oil), Sirūpus Rubi idaei (raspberry syrup), Solutio Iōdi spirituōsa (iodine spirituous solution), eczēma allergīcum (allergic eczema), stomatītis chronīca (chronic stomatitis), systēma condūcens cordis (conducting system of heart), apertūra thorācis inferior (lower opening of chest), muscūlus levātor fornīcis (muscle raising fornix), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian), facies anterior partis petrōsae (anterior surface of petrous part), canāles palatīni minōres (lesser palatine canals), systēma lymphoideum (lymphoid system)

3. *Write down the terms, put the signs of length or brevity over the last but one syllable (using if necessary vocabularies of this manual) and determine in writing the accent:*

ligamentum popliteum obliquum (oblique popliteal ligament), cartilago thyreoidea (thyroid cartilage), bifurcatio tracheae (bifurcation of trachea), musculus anconeus (anconeus muscle), atrium meatus medii (atrium of middle meatus), Extractum Crataegi fluidum (liquid extract of hawthorn), paralysis congenita (congenital paralysis), syndromum immunodeficientiae acquisitae (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), tuberositas pterygoidea (pterygoid tuberosity), anaemia myelogenā (myelogenous anemia), arteria circumflexa humeri anterior (anterior circumflex humeral artery), organum vasculosum laminae terminalis (vascular organ of lamina terminalis), fissura longitudinalis cerebri (longitudinal cerebral fissure), fasciculus uncinatus cerebelli (uncinate fasciculus of cerebellum), kyphosis thoracica (thoracic kyphosis), linea glutea inferior (inferior gluteal line), syndesmoses cranii (cranial syndesmoses), articulatio sacrococcygea (sacrococcygeal joint), segmentum anterius mediale (anterior medial segment), infundibulum vesicae felleae (infundibulum of gallbladder), muscli palati mollis et faucium (muscles of soft palate and fauces), papilla duodeni major (major duodenal papilla), ostium atrioventriculare sinistrum (left atrioventricular orifice), membrana bronchopericardiaca (bronchopericardial membrane), arteria pharyngea ascendens (ascending pharyngeal artery), tuberositas deltoidea (deltoid tuberosity)



**PART II**  
**ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY**

**Lesson 3**  
**The structure of latin anatomical terms.**  
**Noun and its grammar categories**

**§ 18. THE LATIN TERMINOLOGY IN ANATOMY AND ITS STRUCTURE**

Anatomical terminology naming all parts of the human body is the base of medical terminology. For more than a century the so-called Terminologia Anatomica — The International Anatomical Terminology in Latin which is accepted by anatomists of the world has existed. Latin is also the base for creating equivalent terms in other languages. The last edition of this International Anatomic Terminology appeared in 1998 and it contains 7428 terms.

The anatomical term is a word or several words used to denote a definite unit or structure of the human body. So Latin anatomical terms may consist of one, two, three, four and more words — up to 8.

**One-word terms** consist of one noun in singular or plural:

cor (heart), fauces (fauces)

**Two-word terms** may consist of:

1. A noun with an adjective in singular or plural:

crista renālis (renal crest); nodi faciāles (facial nodes)

2. Two nouns in singular or plural:

corpus vertēbrae (body of vertebra); terminatiōnes nervōrum (nerve terminals)

**Three-word terms** may consist of:

1. Three nouns:

ala cristae galli (wing of cock's crest); lamīna arcus vertēbrae (lamina of vertebral arch)

2. One noun plus two adjectives:

glandūlae salivariae minōres (minor salivary glands); plexus cervicālis posterior (posterior cervical plexus)

3. Two nouns plus one adjective:

arcus anterior atlantis (anterior arch of atlas); tuberositas ossis sacri (sacral tuberosity)

**In multiword terms** several nouns and adjectives can be presented:

fissūra horizontālis pulmōnis dextri (horizontal fissure of right lung);

processus uncinātus vertēbrae thoracīcae primae (uncinate process of the first thoracic vertebra)

## § 19. GRAMMAR CATEGORIES OF NOUN

The grammar categories of a Latin noun are the following: 1. Gender. 2. Number. 3. Case. 4. Declension.

There are three genders in Latin: masculine (masculīnum **m**); feminine (feminīnum **f**); neutral (neutrum **n**).

English nouns, in contrast to Latin ones, have only a natural gender: nouns denoting males are masculine (boy, man), nouns denoting females are feminine (girl, women) and nouns denoting inanimate objects are of neutral gender (bone, vessel).

Latin nouns always have only a grammar gender, which is determined by the ending, but what is more significant, by gender signs too (m, f, n). These gender signs are given in the dictionaries, where nouns are presented in the so-called word or dictionary form, which we shall discuss later.

As to the number, both English and Latin have two numbers — singular (singulāris) and plural (plurālis). Just like in English, the number of the noun in Latin shows whether we speak about one thing or more than one. Plural indications in English are very simple (endings -s or -es). In Latin, these indications are more numerous and are determined by the gender and declension. Plural endings will be discussed in detail in a special section.

Case as a grammar category is not presented in every language. It is absent, for example, in French, Italian and Spanish. As to English, we can speak about a “common case” and a “possessive case”. In contrast to English, in Latin there are six different forms of noun endings corresponding to each case. Only four case forms of Latin nouns are used in medical terms:

**Nominatīvus, Nominative** (answers the questions *who, what*)

**Genetīvus, Genitive** (answers the questions *whose, of what*)

**Accusatīvus, Accusative** (answers the questions *whom, what*)

**Ablatīvus, Ablative** (answers the questions *by whom, with what*).

The first two cases (Nominative and Genitive) are mainly used in the medical terminology, the other cases occur more rarely, they are used in anatomical and pharmaceutical terms in combination with prepositions.

## § 20. DICTIONARY FORM OF NOUNS

It is of vital importance to always remember that each Latin noun must be learnt in its “Dictionary form”. This form consists of three components:

1. The full form of the Nominative singular.
2. The Genitive singular ending, indicating the type of declension.
3. Definition of the grammar gender (with the letters m, f, n):

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
ala, ae f	ala, alae, feminīnum	wing

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
ligamentum, i n	ligamentum, ligamenti, neutrum	ligament
nervus, i m	nervus, nervi, masculinum	nerve
cancer, cri m	cancer, cancri, masculinum	cancer
Eucalyptus, i f	Eucalyptus, Eucalypti, femininum	eucalypt
cornu, us n	cornu, cornus, neutrum	horn
corpus, ōris n	corpus, corpōris, neutrum	body

## § 21. THE STEM OF THE NOUN AND THE WAY TO DETERMINE IT

The stem of the noun is essential for declining and word building. It is determined by removing the Genitive ending which indicates the type of the declension:

Dictionary form	Full form of the Genitive	Stem of noun
crista, ae f ri	crist-ae	crist-
sulcus, i m — furrow, groove, sulcus	sulc-i	sulc-
cancer, cri m — cancer	cancr-i	cancr-
forāmen, ĩnis n — opening	foramĭn-is	foramĭn-
arcus, us m — arch	arc-us	arc-
facies, ēi f — face, surface	faci-ēi	faci-

## § 22. DESCRIPTION OF DECLENSIONS

Nouns with the ending **-ae** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 1st declension**; they are mainly feminine:

- ala, ae f — wing
- crista, ae f — crest
- vertēbra, ae f — vertebra

Nouns having the ending **-i** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 2nd declension**.

Nouns of the **masculine gender** can have the ending **-us** in the Nominative (the greatest part) or **-er** (very limited in number):

- angŭlus, i m — angle
- muscŭlus, i m — muscle
- nervus, i m — nerve
- cancer, cri m — cancer (the full form of Genitive — **cancri**)

Nouns of the **neutral gender** have also two types: nouns with the ending form **-um** (the main part), and nouns with the ending form **-on** (they are of Greek origin), compare:

- ligamentum, i n — ligament
- dorsum, i n — back
- encephālon, i n — brain
- colon, i n — colon, large intestine

**The 3rd declension** is the most numerous one. Here are presented the nouns of all genders and with different endings in the Nominative having the ending, — **is** in the Genitive. They are commonly divided into two groups.

The first one includes nouns having equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (so-called *parisyllaba*):

basis, basis f (basis, is f) — base

canālis, canālis m (canalis, is m) — canal

The second and the most numerous part of the nouns has one more syllable in the Genitive compared to the Nominative (so-called *imparisyllaba*):

apex, apĭcis m (the written dictionary form apex, ĭcis m) — apex, tip

tuberositas, tuberositātis f (tuberositas, ātis f) — tuberosity

forāmen, foramĭnis n (forāmen, ĭnis n) — foramen, opening

If such nouns have only one syllable in the Nominative, then the complete form of the Genitive is:

dens, dentis m — tooth

os, ossis n — bone

pars, partis f — part

**The 4th declension** includes nouns of the masculine and neutral gender having the ending **-us** in the Genitive:

processus, processus m (processus, us m) — process

ductus, ductus m (ductus, us m) — duct

cornu, cornus n (cornu, us n) — horn

**The 5th declension** includes nouns having the ending **-ei** in the Genitive:

facies, faciēi f (facies, ēi f) — face, surface

**Attention! Remember the following:**

1. Feminine nouns may occur in the 2nd and 4th declensions, masculine ones in the 1st: oculista, ae m (ophthalmologist), Eucalyptus, i f (eucalypt), manus, us f (hand).

2. Two groups of nouns of the Greek origin retain their particular form:

2.1. Feminine nouns with the ending **-e** in the Nominative and **-es** in the Genitive: raphe, es f (a seam on the bony tissue).

2.2. Masculine nouns with the ending **-es** in the Nominative and **-ae** in the Genitive: diabētes, ae m (diabetes)

## § 23. EXERCISES

1. Give in written form the dictionary form of the following nouns:

apex, basis, canālis, cancer, cornu, corpus, cranium, dens, encephalon, facies, ganglion, lingua, mandibula, nasus, nervus, organon, os, radix, scapula, sternum, sulcus, tuber, tuberculum, tuberositas

2. Give in written form the dictionary form of the following nouns and define their stem and declension:

abdomen, angle, arch, base, bone, canal, crest, duct, head, horn, ligament, lower jaw, nose, opening, region, root (radix), skin, skull, surface, tongue, tooth, upper jaw

3. *Write down the dictionary form of the nouns, translate the terms from Latin:*

apex linguae; angŭlus faciēi nasi; basis crani; canālis radīcis dentis; corpus vertēbrae; facies tubercŭli costae; incisŭra mandibŭlae; nervus encephāli; pars faciēi sterni; septum nasi; sulcus sinus; tuber maxillae

4. *Give the dictionary form of each noun, translate the terms into Latin:*

abdomen cavity; arch of aorta; base of mandible; body of upper jaw; canal of dental radix (radix of tooth); cancer of the skin; cavity of the nose; cervical part (part of cervix); crest of the rib head; face bone; head of rib; nerve of the brain; nervous node of the neck; part of the process; region of skull; skin nerve; sternal angle (angle of sternum); surface of knee; top of the horn; vertebral arch (arch of vertebra)

## § 24. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 3

### Latin-English vocabulary

#### 1st declension

costa, ae f — rib

incisŭra, ae f — incisure, slit or notch

lingua, ae f — tongue

mandibŭla, ae f — lower jaw, mandible

maxilla, ae f — upper jaw, maxilla

#### 2nd declension

angŭlus, i m — angle

cancer, cri m — cancer

cranium, i n — skull

encephālon, i n — brain

ganglion, i n — nervous node

nasus, i m — nose

nervus, i m — nerve

orgānon, i n — organ

septum, i n — septum, dividing wall

sternum, i n — sternum, breast-bone

sulcus, i m — sulcus, furrow or groove

tubercŭlum, i n — tubercle, small rounded swelling

#### 3rd declension

apex, ĩcis m — apex, top

basis, is f — base

caput, ĩtis n — head

canālis, is m — canal

corpus, ōris n — body  
dens, dentis m — tooth  
os, ossis n — bone  
radix, īcis f — radix, root  
regio, ōnis f — region  
tuber, ěris n — tuber, large rounded swelling  
tuberositas, ātis f — tuberosity

#### **4th declension**

cornu, us n — horn, hornshaped process  
processus, us m — process  
sinus, us m — sinus, hollow curvature or cavity

#### **5th declension**

facies, ěi f — face, surface

### **English-Latin vocabulary**

abdomen — abdōmen, ģnis n  
aorta — aorta, ae f  
angle — angŭlus, i m  
apex, top — apex, ģcis m  
arch — arcus, us m  
base — basis, is f  
body — corpus, ōris n  
bone — os, ossis n  
canal — canālis, is m  
cavity — cavitas, ātis f  
cervical: see neck  
costal: see rib  
cranial: see skull  
crest — crista, ae f  
dental: see tooth  
duct — ductus, us m  
ganglion, nervous node — ganglion, i n  
face — facies, ěi f  
head — caput, ģtis n  
horn — cornu, us n  
knee — genu, us n  
ligament — ligamentum, i n  
lower jaw, mandible — mandibŭla, ae f  
neck — cervix, ģcis f  
nerve — nervus, i m  
nose — nasus, i m  
opening — forāmen, ģnis n

part — pars, partis f  
 region — regio, ōnis f  
 rib — costa, ae f  
 root, radix — radix, īcis f  
 skin — cutis, is f  
 skull — cranium, i n  
 surface — facies, ēi f  
 tongue — lingua, ae f  
 tooth — dens, dentis m  
 upper jaw, maxilla — maxilla, ae f  
 vertebra — vertēbra, ae f  
 vertebral: see vertebra

## Lesson 4

### Adjectives and their dictionary form. Adjective and noun agreement

#### § 25. INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION ABOUT ADJECTIVES IN LATIN

Both in English and Latin the adjective is a word expressing the quality of a thing: long, short, nasal, simple and so on.

But in contrast to English, Latin adjectives have always grammar agreement with their nouns, that is a noun and an adjective must have the same gender, case and number. The adjective follows the noun.

According to their endings all Latin adjectives are divided into two groups.

#### § 26. 1ST GROUP OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives which have three gender endings make up the 1st group: Masculine forms have the ending **-us** or **-er**, Feminine — **-a**, Neutral — **-um**:

Masculine	Feminine	Neutral
longus (long)	longa	longum
liber (free)	libĕra	libĕrum
dexter (right)	dextra	dextrum

The dictionary form of adjectives includes the full masculine form, endings of the feminine and the neutral ones (when answering, every gender form is pronounced!). All these forms are in the Nominative:

longus, a, um — long	oral form: longus, longa, longum
liber, ĕra, ĕrum — free	oral form: liber, libĕra, libĕrum
dexter, tra, trum — right	oral form: dexter, dextra, dextrum

In the last two adjectives the endings of the feminine and the neutral forms are enlarged. It is common for the adjectives with the ending **-er** in

the masculine form because it helps us determine, whether the vowel -e in the feminine and the neutral forms is lost or not.

The gender forms of the adjectives of this group have the declension pattern in the nouns of the 1st and 2nd declensions: feminine forms are declined like the nouns of the first declension, masculine and neutral forms — like the nouns of the second declension. The stem of these adjectives is determined like that of the nouns:

Gender form	Nominative	Genitive	Declension	Stem
masculine	longus	longi	second	long-
feminine	longa	longae	first	long-
neutral	longum	longi	second	long-
masculine	liber	libēri	second	liber-
feminine	libēra	libērae	first	liber-
neutral	libērum	libēri	second	liber-
masculine	dexter	dextri	second	dextr-
feminine	dextra	dextrae	first	dextr-
neutral	dextrum	dextri	second	dextr-

As to the adjectives with the masculine form -er, it is more convenient to determine their stem from the feminine Genitive form.

## § 27. 2ND GROUP OF ADJECTIVES

This group includes adjectives following the rules of the third declension of nouns. According to their gender endings they are divided into three subgroups. The stem of this group of adjectives is determined like in the preceding group.

**The first subgroup** is made up of adjectives having three gender endings: **-er** for masculine, **-is** for feminine, **-e** for neutral:

Masculine form	Feminine form	Neutral form	Genitive form	Stem
acer (sharp, acute)	acris	acre	acris	acr-
celer (quick, fast)	celēris	celēre	celēris	celer-

The written dictionary form, as in the previous group, includes the full masculine form and the endings of the feminine and the neutral:

acer, crī, cre  
celer, ēris, ěre

When answering orally, every gender form is pronounced in full.

**The second subgroup** includes adjectives with two gender endings. Masculine and feminine forms have the common ending **-is**, neutral — the ending **-e**:

Masculine and Feminine form	Neutral form	Genitive form	Stem
brevis (brief, short)	breve	brevis	brev-
frontālis (frontal)	frontāle	frontālis	frontal-
sacrālis (sacral)	sacrāle	sacrālis	sacral-



Adjectives of this subgroup are the most numerous in every branch of medical terminology.

The dictionary form of these adjectives consists of the full masculine/feminine form and the ending of neutral:

brevis, e; frontalis, e; sacralis, e

**The third subgroup** is made up of adjectives with one ending, common for the three genders. There are four kinds of such common endings:

- 1) **-ns**: sapiens (masculine, feminine, neutral) intelligent
- 2) **-s**: teres (masculine, feminine, neutral) round
- 3) **-r**: par (masculine, feminine, neutral) equal, pair
- 4) **-x**: simplex (masculine, feminine, neutral) simple

Let us look at these adjectives from the point of view of their Genitive form and their stem:

Gender form	Nominative form	Genitive form	Stem
masculine feminine neutral	sapiens sapiens sapiens	sapientis	sapient-
masculine feminine neutral	teres teres teres	terētis	teret-
masculine feminine neutral	par par par	paris	par-
masculine feminine neutral	simplex simplex simplex	simplicis	simplic-

The dictionary form of these adjectives includes the Nominative form and the Genitive ending:

sapiens, entis (oral form sapiens, sapientis)

teres, ětis (oral form teres, terētis)

par, is (oral form par, paris)

simplex, ĩcis (oral form simplex, simplicis)

## § 28. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

To agree an adjective and a noun in Latin means to say or to write these parts of speech in the same gender, number and case. To do it you should:

- 1) imagine or write dictionary forms of the noun and adjective;
- 2) correctly determine the gender, number and case of the noun;
- 3) place the noun in the first place of the term
- 4) choose the correct grammar form of the adjective for this noun and put it in the second place (after the noun).

Let us take, e. g., the following word combinations: 1) sacral vertebra; 2) carotid tubercle 3) palatine groove

First of all, let us write down the dictionary form of every word:

sacral — *sacrālis*, e; carotid — *carotīcus*, a, um; tubercle — *tubercŭlum*, i n; palatine — *palatīnus*, a, um; groove — *sulcus*, i m; vertebra — *vertēbra*, ae f

Now, let us make up the procedure of agreement:

1) *vertēbra*: gender — feminine, number — singular, case — Nominative.

So in the dictionary form of the adjective we choose the form *sacralis* and agree it in this way with the noun *vertebra*: *vertebra sacralis*

2) *tubercŭlum*: gender — neutral, singular, Nominative.

That's why we choose the adjective form *caroticum* and make up the term *tuberculum caroticum*.

3) *sulcus*: Masculine, Singular, Nominative.

So for this noun we need the adjective form *palatīnus*. Writing down it after the noun *sulcus* we get as a result the term *sulcus palatīnus*.

If we have to agree two adjectives with one noun, the order of agreement is the following. The adjective indicating the main space location of the object (*cardiācus*, a, um cardiac; *cervicālis*, e cervical, *gastrīcus*, a, um gastric and so on) is placed after the noun: right gastric artery — *arteria gastrica dextra*, deep lymph vessel — *vas lymphaŭticum profundum*.

One should be able not only to agree adjectives and nouns in the Nominative, but also make up the Genitive form from this Nominative construction. So, let us make the Genitive forms of the above mentioned Nominative forms:

1) *vertēbra sacralis*: from the dictionary form we already know the Genitive form and write it down: *vertebrae*. Now, we have to determine the Genitive form of *sacralis*. As we have seen above, this adjective belongs to the third declension, that's why the Genitive form should have the ending -is, that is *sacralis*, which finally makes in the Genitive the word combination *vertebrae sacralis*.

2) *tubercŭlum carotīcum*: both the noun and the adjective belong to the second declension, that's why they have to receive the ending -i in the Genitive form — *tuberculi carotici*.

3) *sulcus palatīnus*: *sulcus*, as it is evident from the dictionary form, belongs to the second declension, the ending -us in the adjective *palatinus* tells us that this form belongs to the second declension and so we can determine the Genitive form as *palatīni*. The whole term in Genitive form is *sulci palatini*.

## § 29. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form of the following adjectives:

*articulāris*, *celēris*, *compositum*, *dextrum*, *frontālis*, *impar*, *interna*, *libĕrum*, *nasāle*, *palatīna*, *sapiens*, *simplex*, *teres*, *thoracīcum*

2. *Make up the dictionary form of every word, translate the word combinations and add forms of the Genitive singular for every word combination:*

articulatio simplex; canālis longus; cornu coccygēum; ductus sublinguālis; facies articulāris; ganglion impar; ligamentum teres; margo sinister; os hyoideum; pars dextra; pulsus cardiācus celer; sulcus brevis; vas lymphaticum profundum; vena occipitālis

3. *Agree the following adjectives with the nouns:*

angūlus, i m (frontālis, e; mastoideus, a, um);  
articulatio, ōnis f (compositus, a, um; sinister, tra, trum; simplex, ĩcis);  
facies, ēi f (costālis, e; internus, a, um; dexter, tra, trum)  
ganglion, i n (impar, āris; sublinguālis, e);  
ligamentum, i n (teres, ětis; brevis, e);  
margo, ĩnis m (dexter, tra, trum; liber, ěra, ěrum; nasālis, e);  
musculus, i m (teres, ětis; magnus, a, um);  
nervus, i m (hypoglossus, a, um; occipitālis, e);  
pars, partis f (petrōsus, a, um; frontālis, e);  
processus, us m (articularis, e; palatīnus, a, um; brevis, e)  
ramus, i m (communīcans, ntis; costālis, e; externus, a, um);

4. *Make up grammatical agreement of the adjectives with the nouns in Latin :*

arch (dental, venous, left); artery (deep, lingual, right); bone (short, palatine, hyoid); canal (long, short, sacral); crest (lacrimal, external); duct (hepatic, sublingual); joint (complex, simple); process (palatine, costal); region (cervical, mastoid); tubercle (carotid, lateral); vein (deep, sacral); vertebra (prominent, thoracic); vessel (left, lymphatic)

5. *Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the following terms into Latin:*

articular surface; costal arch; deep lymphatic vessel; frontal crest; lateral thoracic vein; lateral pterygoid muscle; left hepatic duct; long ligament; medial root; occipital artery; occipital angle; oval opening; palatine process; superficial vein; vertebral column

## § 30. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 4

### Latin-English vocabulary

#### 1st declension

arteria, ae f — artery

vena, ae f — vein

vertēbra, ae f — vertebra

#### 2nd declension

ligamentum, i n — ligament

musculus, i m — muscle

### 3rd declension

articulatio, ōnis f — joint  
margo, ĩnis m — margin, border  
pars, partis f — part  
vas, vasis n — vessel

### 4th declension

ductus, us m — duct  
pulsus, us m — pulse

### 1st group of adjectives

cardiācus, a, um — cardiac  
coccygēus, a, um — coccygeal  
compositus, a, um — complex  
dexter, tra, trum — right  
externus, a, um — external  
iliācus, a, um — iliac  
internus, a, um — internal  
hyoideus, a, um — hyoid, sublingual (bone)  
hypoglossus, a, um — hypoglossal, sublingual (nerve)  
liber, ěra, ěrum — free  
longus, a, um — long  
lymphaticus, a, um — lymphatic  
magnus, a, um — large (vein), magnus (adductor), great (nerve)  
mastoideus, a, um — mastoid  
palatīnus, a, um — palatine  
petrōsus, a, um — stony  
profundus, a, um — deep  
sacer, cra, crum — sacral (bone)  
sinister, tra, trum — left  
thoracicus, a, um — thoracic

### 2nd group of adjectives

articulāris, e — articular  
brevis, e — short  
celer, ěris, ěre — celer (pulse), swift  
communīcans, ntis — communicative  
costālis, e — costal  
frontālis, e — frontal  
impar, āris — impar, unpaired  
nasālis, e — nasal  
occipitālis, e — occipital  
sacrālis, e — sacral  
sapiens, entis — intelligent, clever  
simplex, ĩcis — simple

sublinguālis e — sublingual (excepting nerve and bone)  
superficiālis, e — superficial  
teres, ētis — round (excepting foramen)

### English-Latin glossary

artery — arteria, ae f  
carotid — carotīcus, a, um  
cervical — cervicālis, e  
column — columna, ae f  
complex — composītus, a, um  
costal — costālis, e  
deep — profundus, a, um  
dental — dentālis, e  
duct — ductus, us m  
external — externus, a, um  
hepatic — hepaticus, a, um  
hyoid — hyoideus, a, um (os)  
joint — articulatio, ōnis f  
lacrimal — lacrimālis, e  
lateral — laterālis, e  
ligament — ligamentum, i n  
lingual — linguālis, e  
left — sinister, tra, trum  
long — longus, a, um  
lymphatic — lymphaticus, a, um  
mastoid — mastoideus, a, um  
medial — mediālis, e  
occipital — occipitālis, e  
oval — ovālis, e  
palatine — palatīnus, a, um  
prominent — prominens, entis  
pterygoid — pterygoideus, a, um  
right — dexter, tra, trum  
sacral — sacrālis, e (except for os)  
short — brevis, e  
superficial — superficiālis, e  
sublingual — sublingualis, e (except for os and nervus)  
vein — vena, ae f  
venous — venōsus, a, um  
vertebral — vertebrālis, e  
vessel — vas, vasis n

**Lesson 5**  
**Degrees of comparison of adjectives.**  
**Peculiarities of the use of comparative**  
**and superlative degrees in anatomical terms**

**§ 31. INTRODUCTORY REMARKS TO THE TOPIC**

Comparative and superlative as degrees of comparison exist both in English and Latin, that's why there is no need to explain the essence of these grammar phenomenon. It is more essential to note that in the international medical nomenclatures, the forms of comparative and superlative have a relatively narrow sphere of use. Most frequently they are used in the anatomical terminology. As to the grammar formation, both comparative and superlative are built from the stem of the positive degree, that is from the dictionary form of the adjective.

**§ 32. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE**

To form the comparative degree, it is necessary 1) to find the stem of the positive degree; 2) to add the suffix **-ior** for the masculine and feminine forms and **-ius** for the neutral form:

Positive degree	Stem	Comparative masculine and feminine form	Comparative neutral form	Translation
longus, a, um (long) ruber, bra, brum (red) simplex, ĩcis (simple)	long- rubr- simplic-	longior rubrior simplicior	longius rubrius simplicius	longer redder more simple

The full dictionary form of the masculine and the feminine has the ending **-ior** while the neutral form has **-ius**:

longior, ius (written dictionary form)	longior, longius (oral form)
rubrior, ius (written dictionary form)	rubrior, rubrius (oral form)
simplicior, ius (written dictionary form)	simplicior, simplicius (oral form)

Adjectives in the comparative degree have the same pattern of declension as nouns of the third declension. Their distinctive feature is the ending **-ōris** in the Genitive:

Nominative form of comparative	Genitive form of comparative	Stem
longior (m, f) longius (n)	longiōris	longior-
rubrior (m, f) rubrius (n)	rubriōris	rubrior-
simplicior simplicius	simpliciōris	simplicior-

The grammar agreement of the comparative form with nouns follows the common rules:

Positive degree		Comparative degree	
m processus	m longus	m processus	m longior
n ligamentum	n longum	n ligamentum	n longius
f costa	f longa	f costa	f longior
n systēma	n simplex	n systēma	n simplicius

### § 33. COMPARATIVE FORMS IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

In anatomical (and histological) terminology only limited forms of adjectives in the comparative degree are used. First of all, comparative forms of the adjectives great (large) and little (small) are used:

Positive degree of Latin adjective	English equivalents	Comparative form of Latin adjectives	English anatomical equivalents
magnus, a, um	great, large	maior (major) maius (majus)	greater, larger, major
parvus, a, um	little, small	minor, minus	lesser, smaller, minor

In the forms minor, minus we don't see the full endings -ior, -ius, but that is a distinctive feature of these forms to remember.

In anatomical terminology four adjectives in the comparative form are also used, although from the point of view of English, not every of such forms expresses comparison:

Latin masculine and feminine form	Latin neural form	Latin dictionary form	English anatomical equivalent
anterior	anterius	anterior, ius	anterior
posterior	posterius	posterior, ius	posterior
superior	superius	superior, ius	upper, superior
inferior	inferius	inferior, ius	lower, inferior

Thus, only 6 adjectives in the comparative degree are used in Latin anatomical terminology:

Latin dictionary form	Genitive form	Stem
anterior, ius	anteriōris	anterior-
posterior, ius	posteriōris	posterior-
superior, ius	superiōris	superior-
inferior, ius	inferiōris	inferior-
major, ius	majōris	major-
minor, us	minōris	minor-

We should note that the stem of the adjectives in the comparative degree coincides with the Nominative masculine and feminine forms ending with -ior.

The Genitive singular form in the comparative degree is formed by adding the ending **-is** to the stem.

It is necessary to remember that Latin adjectives in the comparative degree are always placed last in the multiword term:

facies articularis superior — superior articular surface

musculus obliquus capitis inferior — inferior oblique muscle of head

### § 34. THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

Commonly, the superlative degree is formed by adding the suffix **-issim-** and gender endings **-us, -a, -um** to the stem of the positive degree:

Positive degree	Stem	Superlative degree	English equivalent
latus, a, um (broad, vast, wide)	lat-	latissimus, a, um	the broadest (vastest, widest), latissimus (in Anatomy)
longus, a, um (long)	long-	longissimus, a, um	the longest
subtilis, e (fine)	subtil-	subtilissimus, a, um	the finest

Some forms of superlative degree are formed in a special way:

Initial form	Superlative degree	English anatomical equivalent
magnus, a, um (great)	maximus, a, um	the greatest, maximus
parvus, a, um (little, small)	minimus, a, um	the least, minimus
inferior, ius (inferior, lower)	imus, a, um	lower, imus
superior, ius (superior, upper)	supremus, a, um	supreme, the highest

The dictionary form of adjectives in the superlative degree is similar to adjectives of the first group with the endings **-us, -a, um**. They are declined also like the adjectives of the first group and their stem is determined similarly.

### § 35. PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF THE COMPARISON DEGREES OF THE ADJECTIVES MAGNUS, A, UM AND PARVUS, A, UM IN LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

The quality of great (large) or little (small) can be expressed in Latin anatomical terminology by different forms of comparison degrees but the use of these forms, as a rule, is strictly regulated. As to English equivalent forms, unfortunately, we don't observe here such a strict regulation. Moreover, different variants of above mentioned adjectives in different editions of "The International Anatomical Terminology" are used. In this textbook we have decided to use only the terms presented in the last official edition, that is "International Anatomical Terminology. FCAT. Federative Committee on Anatomical Terminology". Stuttgart, New York: Thieme, 1998. It is necessary to stress that in this edition, the above mentioned Latin adjectives in



comparative and superlative forms are namely used as English anatomical equivalents.

Let us systematize the forms of comparison degrees of the above mentioned adjectives:

Latin positive degree	English equivalent	Latin comparative degree	English anatomical equivalent	Latin superlative degree	English anatomical equivalent
magnus, a, um	great, large, magnus	major, majus	greater, larger, major	maximus, a, um	maximus, major
parvus, a, um	little, small	minor, minus, smaller	lesser, smaller, minor	minimus, a, um	minimus, little

Now some notes about the use of Latin degree comparison forms that you should remember.

1. Forms **magnus** / **parvus** are used, if a solitary anatomical structure is indicated:

forāmen (occipitāle) magnum — foramen (occipital) magnum  
arteria pancreatīca magna — greater pancreatic artery  
vena magna cerēbri — great cerebral vein  
nervus auriculāris magnus — great auricular nerve  
muscūlus adductor magnus — adductor magnus muscle  
nucleus magnus — large nucleus

2. Forms **major** / **minor** are used if dimensions of two similar and placed next to each other anatomical structures are compared:

ala major / ala minor — greater wing / lesser wing  
pelvis major / pelvis minor — greater pelvis / lesser pelvis  
nervus petrōsus major / nervus petrosus minor — greater petrosal nerve / lesser petrosal nerve  
muscūlus pectorālis major / muscūlus pectorālis minor — pectoral major muscle / pectoral minor muscle  
musculus teres major / musculus teres minor — teres major muscle / teres minor muscle

**There are some exceptions from this rule:**

muscūlus adductor magnus / muscūlus adductor minimus — adductor magnus / adductor minimus

vena cardiāca magna / vena cardiāca parva — great cardiac vein / small cardiac vein

vena saphēna magna / vena saphēna parva — great saphenous vein / small saphenous vein

The forms major / minor are most common in Latin anatomical terminology. As for English equivalents of such terms there is no, unfortunately, universal pattern of systematization of their use, and some irregular translation variants sometimes should be used, compare:

anūlus irīdis major — outer border of iris

anūlus irīdis minor — inner border of iris

One more example. It isn't clear why the equivalent to *arteria pancreatica magna* in English is *greater pancreatic artery*, though there isn't any artery with the opposite sense (lesser, smaller, minor) near this artery. Such examples can be numerous.

3. Forms *maximus* / *minus* are used in two meanings:

a) in the meaning of the positive degree *parvus* (little):

*digītus minīmus* — little finger (in the list of the terms of general anatomy).

But in terms with the noun *musculus* are so-called Latin Technical Termini (naturally, in English pronunciation as in other similar cases) used:

*muscūlus extensor digīti minīmi* — extensor digiti minimi

*muscūlus adductor digīti minīmi brevis* — adductor digiti minimi brevis

*muscūlus oppōnens digīti minīmi* — opponens digiti minimi

In these cases the English equivalent *minus* is to be understood as “the least”.

b) forms ***maximus*** / ***minus*** only in the meaning the greatest / the least are used in the following terms:

*muscūlus glutēus maxīmus* — gluteus maximus muscle

*musculus glutēus minīmus* — gluteus minimus muscle

*muscūlus scalēnus minīmus* — scalenus minimus muscle

And only in one case the English form of the superlative degree is used:

***foramīna venārum minīmārum*** — openings of the smallest (cardiac) veins

### § 36. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate it into English and make up the Genitive form of each word combination:

*ala major*; *cartilāgo alaris major*; *cornu majus*; *facies anterior*; *ganglion cervicāle superius*; *incisūra vertebrālis inferior*; *ligamentum longitudināle anterius*; *nervus alveolāris inferior*; *pervis major*; *spina tympanīca major*; *sulcus minor*; *tubercūlum majus*

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

*arcus anterior atlantis*; *arteria thyroidea ima*; *concha nasālis suprēma*; *crista tubercūli majōris*; *facies anterior partis petrōsae*; *fossa cranii anterior*; *labium faciēi inferius*; *muscūlus longissīmus capītis (thorācis)*; *muscūlus palpēbrae superiōris*; *nervus splanchnīcus imus*, *paries anterior gastris*; *pars libēra membri superiōris*; *plica duodēni major*; *spina iliāca posterior inferior*; *sulcus sinus petrōsi inferiōris*; *vena saphēna parva*

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate from English into Latin:

adductor magnus muscle; anterior ethmoidal opening; bursa of the broadest muscle of back; crest of greater tubercle; gluteus minimus muscle; great

auricular nerve; lesser horn; greater palatine groove; greater petrosal nerve; groove for inferior petrosal sinus; groove for lesser petrosal nerve; highest nuchal line; inferior surface of the tongue; large nucleus; latissimus dorsi (muscle); lesser pelvis; lesser splanchnic nerve; lesser wing of sphenoidal bone; lower articular process; lower lip; major sublingual duct; posterior longitudinal ligament; small saphenous vein; smaller rhomboid muscle; superior nerve node; teres minor muscle; upper (lower) head

**Attention!** Constructions with the preposition **for** + **adjective** + **noun** are to be translated into Latin as the **Genitive form without a preposition**: canal for vertebral artery — canālis arteriae vertebrālis.

### § 37. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 5

#### Latin-English vocabulary Nouns of the 1st declension

ala, ae f — wing  
concha, ae f — concha (shell-shaped hole)  
crista, ae f — crest  
fossa, ae f — fossa ( little hole)  
palpēbra, ae f — eyelid  
plica, ae f — fold  
spina, ae f — spine

#### Nouns of the 2nd declension

duodēnum, i n — duodenum  
labium, i n — lip  
membrum, i n — limb

#### Nouns of the 3rd declension

atlas, ntis m — atlas (the first cervical vertebra)  
cartilāgo, ĩnis f — cartilage  
gaster, tris f — stomach  
paries, ětis m — wall  
pelvis, is f — pelvis  
thorax, ācis m — thorax, chest

#### Adjectives of the 1st group

imus, a, um — imus (ima), lower  
longissĭmus, a, um — the longest  
parvus, a, um — little, small  
saphēnus, a, um — saphenous  
suprēmus, a, um — supreme, the highest  
thyr(e)oideus, a, um — thyroid

#### Adjectives of the 2nd group

alveolāris, e — alveolar  
cervicālis, e — cervical

longitudinālis, e — longitudinal

vertebrālis, e — vertebral

### **Adjectives in the form of comparative degree**

anterior, ius — anterior

posterior, ius — posterior

superior, ius — superior

inferior, ius — inferior

major, ius — major, greater

minor, ius — minor, lesser, smaller

### **English-Latin glossary**

anterior — anterior, ius

auricular — auriculāris, e

adductor — (muscūlus) adductor, ōris m

back — dorsum, i n

broadest — latissīmus, a, um

bursa (pouch, sac) — bursa, ae f

ethmoidal — ethmoidālis, e

gluteal — glutēus, a, um

greater — major, jus

head — caput, ūtis n

highest — suprēmus, a, um

imus, ima — imus, a, um

inferior — inferior, ius

large — magnus, a, um

latissimus — latissīmus, a, um

lesser — minor, us

lip — labium, i n

longitudinal — longitudinālis, e

lower — inferior, ius

magnus, magnum — magnus, a, um

major — major, jus

minimus — minīmus, a, um

minor — minor, us

nerve node — ganglion, i n

nucleus — nucleus, i m

nuchal — nuchālis, e

pectoral — pectorālis, e

petrosal — petrōsus, a, um

rhomboid — rhomboideus, a, um

saphenous — saphēnus, a, um

smaller — minor, us

sphenoidal — sphenoidālis, e  
 splanchnic — splanchnīcus, a, um  
 superior, upper — superior, ius  
 thyroid — thyr(e)oideus, a, um

## Lesson 6

### The masculine gender in the third declension of nouns. Names of muscles performing different functions

#### § 38. MASCULINE NAMES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION FROM THE POINT OF VIEW OF THEIR ENDINGS IN THE NOMINATIVE AND THE GENITIVE

All masculine names in the third declension may be grouped according to the following table:

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Example	Exceptions
-er	-ēris -ērīs -tris	trochanter, ēris m <i>trochanter</i> vomer, ēris m <i>vomer</i> venter, ntris m <i>belly of the muscle</i>	cadāver, ěris n <i>cadaver, dead body</i> tuber, ěris n <i>tuber, tuberosity</i> gaster, tris f <i>stomach</i> mater, tris f <i>mater, cerebral coat</i>
-es	-ĕdis -ĕtis	pes, pedis m <i>foot</i> paries, ĕtis m <i>wall</i>	
-ex	-īcis	cortex, īcis m <i>cortex, crust</i>	
-o	-īnis -ōnis	homo, īnis m <i>man</i> pulmo, ōnis m <i>lung</i>	
-or	-ōris	tumor, ōris m <i>tumor</i>	arbor, ōris f <i>tree</i> cor, cordis n <i>heart</i>
-os	-oris	flos, floris m <i>flower</i>	os, oris n <i>mouth</i> os, ossis n <i>bone</i>

Learning by heart this table helps constitute agreement of adjectives and nouns.

#### § 39. SOME EXPLANATIONS TO THE EXCEPTIONS PRESENTED IN THE TABLE

1. The noun arbor is used to denote two anatomical structures having a shape similar to a tree:
  - a) arbor bronchiālis (bronchial tree)
  - b) arbor vitae cerebelli (arbor vitae of cerebellum, medullar body of cerebellum having a form of a tree in its sections).

2. The noun *mater* in the combination with adjectives takes the second place:

- a) *dura mater encephali (cranialis)* — dura mater of brain (cranial dura mater)
- b) *pia mater medullae spinalis* — spinal pia mater
- c) *arachnoidea mater* — arachnoid mater

#### § 40. LATIN NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS

Latin names of muscles performing different functions (rotation, raising, pressing, bending and so on) consist of two words. The noun *muscūlus* (m.) is put in the first place with the name of the muscle following it:

- m. (*muscūlus*) *levātor* — Levator
- m. (*muscūlus*) *massēter* — Masseter
- m. (*muscūlus*) *tensor* — Tensor

As we see, English equivalents contain merely the name of a muscle. This rule relates to all muscle names of English anatomical terms.

It is important to remember that in Latin terms the following strict word order of muscle names is observed.

- 1. The noun muscle takes the 1st place.
- 2. The name of muscle takes the 2nd place.
- 3. The name of the structure, where the muscle is functioning, takes the third place and this name consisting of one or two words is always presented in the Genitive.
- 4. If the muscle has an adjective (*long, short, vast* and so on), this adjective is the last in the combination:

- Extensor digiti minimi* — *muscūlus extensor digīti minīmi*
- Flexor pollicis brevis* — *muscūlus flexor pollicis brevis*
- Pronator quadratus* — *muscūlus pronātor quadrātus*
- Tensor veli palatini* — *muscūlus tensor veli palatīni*
- Levator anguli oris* — *muscūlus levātor angūli oris*

As we can see, Latin technical terms predominate in English equivalents. Genuine English names are absent and Latin words are transliterated.

As to the Latin names of muscles which denote different functions, they are, as a rule, nouns of the third declension with the ending *-or*, more seldom *-er*. To be more precise, 18 muscles have the ending **-or** and only 3 — the ending **-er**.

In two cases, there are several muscle names to denote the same function. So muscles named *arrector, cremaster, levator* may fulfill elevation. The muscles *compressor, constrictor, sphincter* fulfill compression. In these cases every muscle has its certain sphere of application which is to be memorized.

## § 41. EXERCISES

1. *Give the dictionary form of every word and translate from Latin:*

ala vomēris; arachnoidea mater; arbor vitae cerebelli; cadāver homīnis; cortex renis; dura mater craniālis seu dura mater encephāli; paries externus ductus cochleāris; paries gastris posterior, pars superior pedis dextri; pia mater spinālis; tumor pariētis gastris; venter anterior muscūli digastrīci; vestibŭlum oris

2. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:*

angle of mouth; bronchial tree; cardiac notch of left lung; dorsal artery of foot; frontal tuber of cranium; greater trochanter and lesser trochanter; intelligent man (as a biological species); parietal tuber; pelvic part of ureter; posterior wall of stomach; right border of heart; sole of the foot; vomerine groove (=groove of vomer)

3. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:*

muscŭlus adductor digīti minīmi; muscŭlus levātor labii superiōris; muscŭlus levātor scapŭlae; muscŭlus pronātor quadrātus; muscŭlus sphincter pupillae; muscŭlus tensor fasciae latae; pars profunda muscūli massetēris

4. *Write down the dictionary form and translate from English into Latin:*

Adductor minimus; Depressor of lower lip; Extensor indicis; Flexor digiti minimi brevis; Flexor pollicis longus; Rotator of neck; inferior Constrictor of pharynx; Tensor veli palatini

## § 42. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 6

### Latin-English dictionary

#### Nouns of the 1st declension

fascia, ae f — fascia

planta, ae f — sole

pupilla, ae f — pupil

scapŭla, ae f — scapula, shoulder blade

vita, ae f — life

#### Nouns of the 2nd declension

cerebellum, i n — cerebellum

digītus, i m — finger

vestibŭlum, i n — vestibule

#### Nouns of the 3rd declension

m. adductor, ōris m — adductor (bringing muscle)

arbor, ōris f — tree

arbor vitae — arbor vitae

cadāver, ěris n — cadaver (dead body)

cortex, ĩcis m — cortex (crust)

homo, ĩnis m — man

m. levator, ōris m — levator (elevating muscle)

mater, tris f — mater (cerebral coat)  
m. massēter, ēris m — masseter (chewing muscle)  
os, oris n — mouth  
pes, pedis m — foot  
m. pronātor, ōris m — pronator (muscle turning the forearm)  
ren, renis m — kidney  
seu — or  
m. sphincter, ēris m — sphincter (compressing muscle)  
m. tensor, ōris m — tensor (straining muscle)  
tumor, ōris m — tumor (swelling, growth)  
vomer, ēris m — vomer  
venter, tris m — belly (of the muscle)

#### **Adjectives of the 1st group**

arachnoideus, a um — arachnoid  
digastrīcus, a um — digastric  
durus, a, um — solid  
dura mater — dura mater  
latus, a, um — broad  
fascia lata — fascia lata  
quadrātus, a, um — square, quadrate (muscle), quadratus (pronator)

#### **Adjectives of the 3rd group**

cochleāris, e — cochlear  
craniālis, e — cranial  
spinālis, e — spinal

#### **English-Latin glossary**

Adductor (bringing muscle) — m. adductor, ōris m  
border — margo, ĩnis m  
bronchial — bronchiālis, e  
Constrictor (compressing muscle) — m. constrictor, ōris m  
Depressor (lowing muscle) — m. depressor, ōris m  
digitus, digiti — digĭtus, i m  
dorsal — dorsālis, e  
Extensor (unbending muscle) — m. extensor, ōris m  
Flexor (bending muscle) — m. flexor, ōris m  
foot — pes, pedis m  
frontal — frontālis, e  
heart — cor, cordis n  
index, indicis (index finger) — index, ĩcis m  
lung — pulmo, ōnis m  
man — homo, ĩnis m  
mouth — os, oris n



palatinum, palatine — palatīnus, a, um  
 parietal — parieālis, e  
 pelvic — pelvīcus, a, um  
 pharynx — pharynx, yngis m  
 pollex, pollicis (thumb) — pollex, ĭcis m  
 Rotator (rotating muscle) — m. rotātor, ōris m  
 stomach — gaster, tris f  
 Tensor (straining muscle) — m. tensor, ōris m  
 tree — arbor, ōris f  
 trochanter — trochanter, ēris m  
 ureter — urēter, ēris m  
 velum (curtain) — velum, i n  
 vomer — vomer, ěris m  
 wall — paries, ětis m

## Lesson 7

### FEMININE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

#### § 43. SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE FEMININE NAMES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

All feminine names in the third declension may be systematized in the following table:

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Examples	Exceptions
-do	-ĭnis	longitūdo, ĭnis f <i>length</i>	tendo, ĭnis m <i>tendon, sinew</i>
-go	-ĭnis	cartilāgo, ĭnis f <i>cartilage</i>	margo, ĭnis m <i>border, edge</i>
-io	-ōnis	articulatio, ōnis f <i>joint</i>	
-as	-ātis	cavitas, ātis f <i>cavity</i>	atlas, ntis m <i>atlas</i> ; pancreas, ātis n <i>pancreas</i> ; vas, vasis n <i>vessel</i>
-is	-is (parisyllaba)	cutis, is f <i>skin</i>	axis, is m <i>axis</i> canālis, is m <i>canal</i> unguis, is m <i>nail</i>
-is	-ĭdis (imparisyllāba)	pyrāmis, ĭdis f <i>pyramid</i>	pulvis, ěris m <i>powder</i> sanguis, ĭnis m <i>blood</i>
-us	-ūdis	incus, ūdis f <i>incus, little bone of the ear</i>	
consonant + s	consonant +tis	pars, partis f <i>part</i>	dens, dentis m <i>tooth</i>
vowel + x (except -ex)	vowel + -cis vowel + -gis	radix, ĭcis f <i>root</i>	fornix, ĭcis m <i>fornix, arch</i> ; hallux, ūcis m <i>hallux, toe</i> ; coccyx, ygis m <i>coccyx, tailbone</i> thorax, ācis m <i>thorax, chest</i>
consonant + x	consonant + -cis consonant + -gis	falx, falcis f <i>falx, sickle</i> phalanx, ngis f <i>phalanx</i>	larynx, ngis m <i>larynx</i> pharynx, ngis m <i>pharynx</i>

## § 44. EXERCISES

1. *Write down the dictionary form, translate from Latin into English:*

articulatio capitis costae; axis bulbi externus; basis pyramidis renalis; cartilago alaris major; cavitas oris propria; cervix dentis canini; diameter pelvis transversa; margo ciliaris iridis; margo liber unguis; margo uteri dexter; meatus acusticus auris dextrae; os coccygis; ostium appendicis vermiformis; pars libera gingivae; plexus venosus canalis nervi hypoglossi; regio thoracis posterior; sanguis venosus et arteriosus; terminatio nervi cutis; tuberositas phalangis distalis; vas lymphaticum superficiale

2. *Write down the dictionary form, translate into Latin:*

accessory pancreas; anterior arch of atlas; blood vessel of hallux; body of nail; canal of great stony nerve; cartilage of nasal septum; cavity of thorax, ciliary margin of iris; endocrine part of pancreas; fornix of pharynx; free part of upper (lower) limb; greater palatine canal; head of phalanx; inguinal falx or conjoint tendon; knee joint; laryngeal vestibule (=vestibule of larynx); neck of the tooth; right medial division; ring-shaped part of fibrous vagina; root canal of tooth; superior ligament of incus; surface of incisor tooth; tale of pancreas; third molar tooth or wisdom tooth; tuberosity of distal phalanx; tympanic cavity of middle ear

## § 45. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 7

### Latin-English dictionary

#### Nouns of the 1st declension

cauda, ae f — tail

gingiva, ae f — gingiva, gum

tunica, ae f — membrane

#### Nouns of the 2nd declension

bulbus, i m — eyeball

diameter, tri f — diameter

ostium, i n — orifice

uterus, i m — uterus

#### Nouns of the 3rd declension

appendix, icis f — appendix

auris, is f — ear

cavitas, atis f — cavity

cervix, icis f — cervix

coccyx, ygis m — coccyx, coccygeal bone

iris, idis f — iris (central part of the eye)

phalanx, ngis f — phalanx

pyramis, idis f — pyramid

sanguis, inis m — blood

terminatio, onis f — ending

unguis, is m — nail

### **Nouns of the 4th declension**

meātus, us m — meatus (passage)

plexus, us m — plexus (network, chiefly of veins or nerves)

### **Adjectives of the 1st group**

arteriōsus, a um — arterial

acustīcus, a, um — auditory

canīnus, a um — canine

proprius, a, um — proper

transversus, a, um — transverse

venōsus, ā, um — venous

### **Adjectives of the 2nd group**

alāris, e — alar

ciliāris, e — ciliary

distālis, e — distal

renālis, e — renal

superficiālis, e — superficial

vermiformis, e — vermiform

### **English-Latin glossary**

accessory — accessorius, a, um

blood — sanguis, ĩnis m

cavity — cavitas, ātis f

ciliary — ciliāris, e

conjoint — conjunctivus, a, um

distal — distālis, e

division — divisio, ōnis f

ear — auris, is f

endocrine — endocrīnus, a, um

falx — falx, falcis f

fornix — fornix, ĩcis m

hallux — hallux, ūcis m

incisor — incisivus, a um

incus — incus, ūdis f

inguinal — inguinalis, e

iris — iris, ĩdis f

larynx — larynx, yngis m

limb — membrum, i n

medial — mediālis, e

middle — medius, a, um

molar — molāris, e

molar tooth — dens molāris

nail — unguis, is m  
 pancreas — pancreas, ātis n  
 phalanx — phalanx, ngis f  
 tail — cauda, ae f  
 third — tertius, a, um  
 tendon — tendo, ĩnis m  
 tympanic — tympanĭcus, a, um  
 wisdom — sapientia, ae f

## Lesson 8

### Neutral gender in the third declension nouns

#### § 46. SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE NEUTRAL NAMES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

All neutral names in the third declension may be systematized in the following table:

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Examples	Exception
-al	-ālis	anĭmal, ālis n <i>animal</i>	
-ar	-āris	calcar, āris n <i>spur</i>	
-e	-is	rete, is n <i>network</i>	
-en	-ĭnis	abdōmen, ĩnis n <i>abdomen</i>	lien, ēnis m <i>spleen</i> ren, renis m <i>kidney</i> pecten, ĩnis m <i>pecten, crest</i>
-ma (words of Greek origin)	-ātis	diaphragma, ātis n <i>diaphragm</i>	forma, ae f <i>form</i> ; gemma, ae f <i>bud</i> ; mamma, ae f <i>breast</i> ; norma, ae f <i>norm</i> ; rima, ae f <i>rima, fissure, opening</i> ; squama, ae f <i>squamous part, scales</i> ; struma, ae f <i>goiter</i>
-ur	ōris ŭris	femur, ōris n <i>femur, thigh bone</i> sulfur, ŭris n <i>sulphur</i>	
-us	ēris ōris uris	glomus, ēris n <i>glomus, enlargement</i> pectus, ōris n <i>chest</i> crus, cruris n ( <i>1. shank, leg; 2. crus, limb (auditory ossicle); 3. bundle (of myocardium)</i> )	
-ut	-ĭtis	caput, ĭtis n ( <i>head</i> )	

**Attention!** In the noun *hepar* the last but one vowel of the Genitive form is short: *hepātis*. Moreover, the stem of this form contains the consonant “t”.

#### § 47. SOME EXPLANATIONS CONCERNING THE NOUNS HAVING SIMILAR ENDINGS BUT DIFFERENT GENDER AND DECLENSION

Now, after having analyzed practically all noun endings of the third declension in the Nominative and the Genitive you can see that sometimes nouns of different gender and declension may possess the same ending in the Nominative. We can single out at least three groups of such nouns.

1. The most numerous are the nouns with the final element **-us** in the Nominative. Such nouns are found in the 2nd declension and are, as a rule, masculine, but, as we shall see in the pharmaceutical part of our course, the names of trees with the ending **-us** are feminine. Compare:

*musculus*, i m; *sulcus*, i m but: *Eucalyptus*, i f

The ending **-us** may have the nouns of the feminine and neutral genders belonging to the 3rd declension:

*incus*, ūdis f; *corpus*, ōris n.

Finally, not only the nouns of the masculine gender (*ductus*, us m; *processus*, us m) have the ending — **us** in the 4th declension. You should memorize the noun *manus*, us f (hand), and in the pharmaceutical part you will come across the word *Quercus*, us f (oak).

2. When studying the endings of the neutral gender in the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension you could pay attention to the two groups of the nouns with the ending **-ma**:

1) *diaphragma*, ātis n (nouns of Greek origin) but 2) *gemma*, ae f (seven nouns of Latin origin).

3. Finally, let us analyse the nouns with the ending **-er**. They are not very numerous and may occur among masculine nouns of the 2nd declension (*cancer*, cri m). Some of them may be feminine (*diameter*, tri f). The nouns of the 3rd declension with such an ending may be masculine (*trochanter*, ēris m), feminine (*mater*, tris f) and neutral (*tuber*, ěris n).

Summing up, we have to conclude that a Nominative ending can never give us complete and correct information about the grammar status of a noun. We should memorize every noun only in the dictionary form with all its three elements. Only in this way we can avoid making bad grammar mistakes.

#### § 48. EXERCISES

1. *Make up grammar agreement of the adjectives with the following nouns:*  
*arcus* (*dentālis*, e; *superior*, ius; *venōsus*, a, um); *caput* (*longus*, a, um; *brevis*, e; *anterior*, ius); *cartilāgo* (*accessorius*, a, um; *major*, jus; *alāris*, e); *crus* (*ampullāris*, e; *osseus*, a, um; *dexter*, tra, trum); *ligamentum* (*latus*, a, um; *longitudinālis*, e; *minor*, us); *margo* (*sinister*, tra, trum; *teres*, ětis; *superior*, ius);

paries (posterior, ius; internus, a, um; simplex, ĭcis); rete (venōsus, a, um; articulāris, e; simplex, ĭcis); tuber (frontālis, e; anterior, ius; major, jus)

2. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:*

calicūlus gustatorius seu gemma gustatoria; corpus adipōsum orbitae; corpus ossis femōris; crus anterior capsulae internae; diaphragma pelvis; forāmen mastoideum ossis temporālis; glomus carotīcum; pecten ossis pubis; porta hepātis; rima vestibūli laryngis; segmentum renis superius; squama ossis occipitālis; systēma respiratorium

3. *Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:*

accessory spleen; anterior region of thigh; body of gallbladder; central nervous system; culmen of the body of cerebellum; dorsal venous network of hand; epigastric region of abdomen; fissure for ligamentum longum of liver; forehead and occiput of head; gastric surface of spleen; hand region; inferior segment of right kidney, lactiferous duct of breast; left crus of diaphragm; mobile liver; optic chiasm; pulvinar of thalamus; rete mirabile; simple membranous crus; squamous part of frontal bone; stroma and parenchyma of thyroid gland; stroma of iris; tegmen of the fourth ventricle; the longest muscle of head

## § 49. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 8

### Latin-English vocabulary

#### 1st declension

capsūla, ae f — capsula  
gemma, ae f — bud  
orbīta, ae f — orbit  
porta, ae f — porta (gate of the liver)  
rima, ae f — fissure, opening  
squama, ae f — squamous part, scales  
vesīca, ae f — bladder

#### 2nd declension

calicūlus, i m (gustatorius) — bud  
segmentum, i n — segment

#### 3rd declension

crus, cruris n — 1) shank, leg; 2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle); 3) bundle (of myocardium)  
diaphragma, ātis n — diaphragm  
femur, ōris n — femur, thigh (bone)  
hepar, ātis n — liver  
glomus, ěris n — body, enlargement (choroidal), glomus (aortic)  
pecten, ĩnis m — pecten (crest)  
pubes, is f — pubis

rete, is n — 1) rete (mirabile); 2) network (dorsal venous network of hand)  
systēma, ātis n — system

### **Adjectives of the 1st group**

adipōsus, a, um — fat  
carotīcus, a, um — carotid  
felleus, a, um (=biliaris, e) — gall (+Noun)  
gustatorius, a, um — taste (+Noun)  
osseus, a, um — bony  
respiratorius, a, um — respiratory

### **Adjectives of the 2nd group**

ampullāris, e — ampullary  
biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um) — gall (+Noun)  
dentālis, e — dental  
longitudinālis, e — longitudinal

### **English-Latin vocabulary**

breast — mamma, ae f  
central — centrālis, e  
chiasm — chiasma, ātis n  
crus — crus, cruris n  
culmen — culmen, ĩnis n  
diaphragm — diaphragma, ātis  
epigastric — epigastrīcus, a, um  
forehead — sincĭput, ĩtis n  
fourth — quartus, a, um  
gallbladder — vesīca fellea (=vesīca biliāris)  
gastric — gastrīcus, a, um  
hand — manus, us f  
lactiferous — lactifērus, a, um  
liver — hepar, ātis n  
membranous — membranaceus, a, um  
mobile — mobīlis, e  
occiput — occĭput, ĩtis n  
optic — optīcus, a, um  
parenchyma — parenchĭma, ātis n  
pulvinar — pulvīnar, āris n  
rete — rete, is n  
spleen — lien, ēnis m  
stroma — stroma, ātis n  
system — systēma, ātis n  
tegmen — tegmen, ĩnis n

thalamus — thalāmus, i m  
 thigh — femur, ōris n  
 ventricle — vertricūlus, i m

## Lesson 9

### Nominative plural of nouns and adjectives

#### § 50. NOMINATIVE PLURAL ENDINGS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The Nominative plural forms for both nouns and adjectives are formed by adding the Nominative plural endings to their stem. These endings, particularly in the 2nd, 3rd and 4th declensions, depend on the gender and declension of nouns and adjectives, as shown in this table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative Singular	Stem	Nominative Plural endings	Nominative Plural Form
I	f	vertebra thoracica	vertebr- thoracic-	-ae	vertebrae thoracicae
II	m	sulcus dexter	sulc- dextr-	-i	sulci dextri
	n	septum latum ganglion otīcum	sept- lat- gangli- otic-	-a	septa lata ganglia otīca
III	m	homo sapiens	homin- sapien-	-es	homīnes sapientes
	f	pars commūnis	part- commun-	es	partes commūnes
	n	rete mirabile	ret- mirabil-	-ia	retia mirabilia
		foramen anterior	foramin- anterior-	-a	foramīna anteriora
IV	m	processus	process-	-us	processus
	n	cornu	corn-	-ua	cornua
V	f	facies	faci-	-es	facies

As we can observe, only neutral nouns of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension have two variants. The following rules of their ending differentiation are to be memorized.

1. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular get the ending **-ia** :

animal (Nom. sing.) — animalia (Nom. plur.)  
 pulvīnar (Nom. sing.) — pulvinaria (Nom. plur.)  
 rete (Nom. sing.) — retia (Nom. plur.)

2. Neutral adjectives of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension except for adjectives in the comparative form get the ending **-ia**:

Dictionary form	Neutral form	Stem	Nominative Plural form
-----------------	--------------	------	------------------------



Dictionary form	Neutral form	Stem	Nominative Plural form
acer, cris, cre	acre	acr-	acria
celer, ěris, ěre	celěre	celěr-	celeria
frontālis, e	frontāle	frontāl-	frontālia
brevi, e	breve	brev-	brevia
sapiens, ntis	sapiens	sapient-	sapientia
impar, āris	impar	impar-	imparia
simplex, ĩcis	simplex	simplĭc-	simplĭcia

Nouns which don't belong to the first point of the shown above rule as well as adjectives in the comparative form get the ending **-a** in the Nominative plural:  
 foramen superius (sing.) — foramĭna superiōra (plur.)  
 caput minus (sing.) — capĭta minōra (plur.)

### § 51. ABBREVIATIONS OF NOMINATIVE PLURAL FORMS USED IN ANATOMICAL TERMS

A certain number of nouns in the anatomical terms is used in the shortened forms. You have to memorize these abbreviations:

Singular form		Plural form	
Full form	Abbreviation	Full form	Abbreviation
arteria	A.	arteriae	Aa.
bursa	B.	bursae	Bb.
forāmen	F.	foramĭna	Forr.
ganglion	Gangl.	ganglia	Gangll.
glandŭla	Gl.	glandŭlae	Gll.
ligamentum	Lig.	ligamenta	Ligg.
musculŭs	M.	musculi	Mm.
nervus	N.	nervi	Nn.
nucleus	Nucl.	nuclei	Nucll.
ramus	R.	rami	Rr.
vagĭna	Vag.	vagĭnae	Vagg.
vena	V.	venae	Vv.

### § 52. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form, translate into Latin and then make up the Nominative plural of each word combination:

cervical surface; coccygeal horn; greater palatine canal; impar ganglion; inferior nuchal line; jugular foramen; posterior tubercle; rete mirabile; sphenoid process; superior nasal meatus; temporal fossa; thoracic region; tympanic cavity; zygomatic bone

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

Aa. ciliāres posteriōres breves; cartilagĭnes laryngis; Forr. palatĭna minōra; Gangll. pelvĭca; Gll. thyroideae accessoriae; impressiōnes digitātae seu juga cerebralia; labia oris; Ligg. collateralia; Mm. rotatōres cervĭcis; Nn. splanchnĭci sacrāles; nomĭna anatomĭca; Nucll. vestibulāres; orgāna oculi accessoria; ossa

cranii; partes corpōris humāni; plicae transversae recti; radīces craniāles; rami capsūlae internae; rami cardiāci thoracīci; Rr. dorsāles linguae; regiōnes membri superiōris; systemāta genitalia viri et femīnae; Vv. hepaticae dextrae; Vv. temporāles profundae

3. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:*

anterior and posterior divisions; auditory ossicles; blood vessels of retina; borders of the nail; cavities of the body; costal notches; cranial nerves and sutures; eyebrows and eyelashes; general terms; incisive canals; joints of pelvic girdle; lesser palatine foramina; minor salivary glands; muscular branches of common fibular (peroneal) nerve; muscles of back proper; permanent teeth; planes, lines and regions; posterior ethmoidal cells; renal pyramids; true and false ribs; transverse folds of rectum; roots, trunks and cords of brachial plexus

### § 53. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 9

#### Latin-English vocabulary

##### 1st declension

femīna, ae f — woman

plica, ae f — fold

sutūra, ae f — suture

##### 2nd declension

jugum, i n — yoke

ramus, i m — branch

rectum, i n — rectum

vir, i m — man

##### 3rd declension

impressio, ōnis f — impression

nomen, ĩnis n — name

#### Adjectives of the 1st group

anatomīcus, a, um — anatomical

digitātus, a, um — digitate

humānus, a, um — human

otīcus, a, um — otic

#### Adjectives of the 2nd group

alveolāris, e — alveolar

cerebrālis, e — cerebral

collaterālis, e — collateral

dorsālis, e — dorsal

genitālis, e — genital

#### English-Latin glossary

brachial — brachiālis, e

branch — ramus, i m

cell — cellŭla, ae f  
 cord — fascicŭlus, i m  
 division — divisio, ōnis f  
 eyebrow — supercilium, i n  
 eyelash — cilium, i n  
 false — spurius, a, um  
 fibular (=peroneal) — fibulāris (=peronēus, a, um)  
 fossa — fossa, ae f  
 fold — plica, ae f  
 general — generālis, e  
 girdle — cingŭlum, i n  
 jugular — jugulāris, e  
 impar — impar, āris  
 incisive — incisīvus, a, um  
 line — linea, ae f  
 mirabile — mirabīlis, e  
 muscular — musculāris, e  
 notch — incisŭra, ae f  
 ossicle — ossicŭlum, i n  
 permanent — permānens, ntis  
 plane — planum, i n  
 proper — proprius, a, um  
 retina — retīna, ae f  
 salivary — salivarius, a, um  
 suture — sutŭra, ae f  
 true — verus, a, um  
 trunk — truncus, i m  
 term — termīnus, i m  
 zygomatic — zygomaticus, a, um

## Lesson 10

### Genitive plural of nouns and adjectives

#### § 54. GENITIVE PLURAL ENDINGS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

Both nouns and adjectives get the Genitive plural forms by adding the Genitive plural endings to their stem depending mostly on noun and adjective declension, as one may see in the following table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Stems	Genitive plural endings	Genitive plural forms
I	f	vertēbra thoracīca	vertebr- thoracic-	-ārum	vertebrārum thoracicārum

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Stems	Genitive plural endings	Genitive plural forms
II	m	sulcus	sulc-	-ōrum	sulcōrum
	n	dexter ganglion otīcum	dextr- gangl- otic-		dextrōrum gangliōrum oticōrum
III	m	canālis	canal-	-ium	canalium
	f	brevis dens permanens pars	brev- dent- permanent- part-		brevium dentium permanentium partium
III	n	laterālis	lateral-	-ium	lateralium
		vertebrāle	vertebral-		vertebrāle
	os	oss-	os		ossium
	simplex	simplic-	simplex		simplicium
	rete	ret-	rete		retium
	articulāre	articular-	articulāre		articularium
m	margo	margin-	-um	margīnum	
	anterior	anterior-		anteriōrum	
f	articulatio	articulation-	-um	articulatiōnum	
	inferior	inferior-		inferiōrum	
n	forāmen	foramin-	-um	foramīnum	
	majus	major-		majōrum	
IV	m	arcus	arc-	-uum	arcuum
	n	cornu	corn-		cornuum
V	f	facies	faci-	-ērum	faciērum

As we can see, masculine, feminine and neutral nouns and adjectives of the third declension have two variants of the endings.

The ending **-ium** is added to the stems of:

1. Parisyllaba, i. e. the masculine and feminine nouns which have equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive: canālis, is m *canal*; basis, is f *base*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral nouns, if their stem ends with two consonants: dens, dentis m *tooth*; pars, partis f *part*; os, ossis n *bone*.

3. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular: animal, ālis n *animal*; calcar, āris n *calcar (spur)*; rete, is n *net, network*

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the positive degree, see in the table above the adjectives articulāris, e articular; brevis, e short; laterālis, e lateral; permanens, ntis permanent; simplex, ĩcis simple.

The ending **-um** is added to the stems of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, see, e. g., in the table the nouns margo, ĩnis m *border*; articulatio, ōnis f *joint*; forāmen, ĩnis n *opening*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the comparative degree, see in the table the adjectives anterior, ius *anterior*; inferior, ius *upper*; major, jus *major*, *larger*, *greater*.

Some Latin nouns are used only in plural and their dictionary forms are accordingly represented in the Nominative and Genitive plural: fauces, faucium f fauces; species, ērum (speciērum) f species.

**Attention!** The noun vas, vasis n in singular belongs to the third declension, but in plural — to the second one. Compare: *nervi vasis* — nerves of a vessel, but *nervi vasōrum* — nerves of the vessels.

### § 55. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and make up Genitive plural form of each word combination:

anterior tubercle; costal process; floating rib; greater wing; internal base; left spur; lesser opening; lesser sublingual duct; longitudinal ligament; long root; permanent tooth; posterior surface; respiratory region; right crest; sacral horn; short muscle; simple joint; venous network; vertebral canal

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

ligamenta ossiculōrum auditoriōrum; medulla ossium flava et rubra; musculi arrectōres pilōrum; musculi palāti et faucium; nervi vasōrum lymphaticōrum; ostia venārum pulmonalium; plexus cavernōsi conchārum; processus accessorius vertebrārum lumbalium; situs viscērum inversus; vagīnae fibrōsae digitōrum manus

3. Give the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

arteries of lower limbs; curvature of the stomach walls; dividing walls of the frontal sinuses; grooves for extensor muscle tendons; heads of the true, false and floating ribs; muscles of auditory ossicles; muscles of soft palate and faucium; nerves and vessels of vessels; nodules of semilunar cusps; sinuses of the venae cavae (Gen. plur.!); surface of the permanent teeth; tubercles of thoracic vertebrae (Gen. plur.!)

### § 56. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 10

#### Latin-English vocabulary

#### Nouns of the 1st declension

medulla, ae f — medulla

vagīna, ae f (of muscle) — sheath

#### Nouns of the 2nd declension

ossicūlum, i n — ossicle

ostium, i n — opening

palātum, i n — palate

pilus, i m — hair

#### Nouns of the 3rd declension

m. arrector, oris m — arrector  
fauces, ium f — fauces  
viscus, ěris n; usually Plur. viscĕra, um n — viscera, inner organs

#### **Nouns of the 4th declension**

manus, us f — hand  
situs, us m — site

#### **Adjectives of the 1st group**

auditorius, a, um — auditory  
cavernōsus, a, um — cavernous  
fibrōsus, a, um — fibrous  
flavus, a, um — yellow  
inversus, a, um — inverse  
ruber, bra, brum — red

#### **Adjectives of the 2nd group**

lumbālis, e — lumbar  
pulmonālis, e — pulmonary

#### **English-Latin glossary**

cavae — cavus, a, um  
curvature — curvatūra, ae f  
cusp — valvŭla, ae f  
extensor (unbending muscle) — m. extensor, ōris m  
false — falsus, a, um  
floating — fluctuans, ntis  
limb — membrum, i n  
nodule — nodŭlus, i n  
ossicle — ossicŭlum, i n  
palate — palātum, i n  
permanent — permānens, ntis  
respiratory — respiratorius, a, um  
semilunar — semilunāris, e  
soft — mollis, e  
spur — calcar, āris n  
stomach — gaster, tris f  
true — verus, a, um  
venae — vena, ae f  
wall — paries, ětis m

## Lesson 11

### Accusative singular and plural of nouns and adjectives. prepositions used with the accusative

#### § 57. ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL ENDINGS

The Latin Accusative case reflects the direct object by answering the questions “Whom? What?”. In this function it corresponds to the Russian case called “Винительный” or in German — to the case Akkusativ.

Both nouns masculine and feminine as well as adjectives get the Accusative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stem, as one may see in the table below. Neutral nouns and adjectives have no special Accusative endings: Accusative singular form corresponds to the form of the Nominative singular and the Accusative plural form — to the form of the Nominative plural:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Acc. sing. ending	Accusative singular form	Acc. pl. ending	Accusative plural form
I	f	vena cava	-am	venam cavam	-as	venas cavas
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-um	ramum dextrum sulcum palatīnum	-os	ramos dextros sulcos palatīnos
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom. sing.	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom. pl. (-a)	ganglia otīca septa longa
III	m	margo anterior canālis nutriens	-em	margīnem anteriorē canālem nutrientem	-es	margīnes antriōres; canāles nutrientes
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex pelvis major	-em (-im)	partem laterālem basim simplicem pelvim majōrem	-es	partes laterāles bases simplices pelves majōres
	n	rete capillāre crus posterius	=Nom. sing.	rete capillāre crus posterius	=Nom. pl. (-a, -ia)	retia capillaria crura posteriōra
IV	m	processus	-um	processum	-us	processus
	n	cornu	=Nom. sing.	cornu	=Nom. pl. (-ua)	cornua
V	f	facies	-em	faciem	-es	facies

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns in the Accusative singular can get endings **-im** or **-em**. The ending **-im** should have:

1. Nouns with the ending **-sis** in the Nominative singular:  
basis, is f *basis* — basim; dosis, is f *dose* — dosim
2. Nouns pelvis, is f *pelvis* — pelvim; febris, is f *fever* — febrim; tussis, is f *cough* — tussim

#### § 58. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

Preposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
ad	1) to, toward 2) for 3) during, in	ad nervum trigeminum ad usum externum ad morbum hypertonicum	to the trigeminal nerve for the external use in the hypertonic disease
ante	before, in front of	ante operationem ante pulmonem dextrum	before the operation in front of the right lung
circum	(a)round	circum liēnem	around the spleen
contra	for	contra febrim	for the fever
in	in, into, on (when answering the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”)	in oesophagum in partem dextram in canalem longum	into the oesophagus on the right part in the long canal
infra	below, under	infra cor	below (under) the heart
inter	among, between	inter vasa manus inter duo ossa	among the vessels of the hand between two bones
intra	inside	intra thoracem	inside the thorax
per	1) through, via 2) by (means of)	per canalem opticum per ligamenta	through (via) the optic canal by ( means of) the ligaments
post	after, behind	post operationem post costam	after the operation behind the rib
sub	under (when answering the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”)	sub scapulam dextram sub ganglion submandibulare	under the right shoulder blade under the submandibular ganglion
super, supra	above	super (supra) marginem sinistrum supra (super) labium superius	above the left margin  above the upper lip

## § 59. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up forms of the Nominative singular, Accusative singular and plural:

anterior margin; ascending artery; external base; frontal surface; greater pelvis; hepatic duct; left lung; lesser horn; lymphatic vessel; nasal bone; right part; respiratory system; short nerve; vertebral canal

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:

aditus ad antrum; ante operationem difficilem; ante pulmonem dextrum; circum oculum dextrum; in canalem dentis incisivi; in parietem gastris; inter ossa; intra venam facialem; in musculos laryngis; per os; per pelvim minorem; per rectum; post partum; rami ad medullam oblongatam; sub cor; sub ligamenta flava

3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:

above the left lung; after death; among the incisors; before and after childbirth; between the leg bones; by means of the long canal; for cough; for internal (external) use; into the deep vein; inside the stomach artery; on



the superior surface; round the mouth; through the abdomen; under the right kidney; via the common carotid artery

## § 60. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 11

### Latin-English vocabulary

#### Prepositions used with the Accusative

ad — 1) to; 2) for; 3) during

ante — before, in front of

circum — around, round

contra — against

in (to the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”) — in, into, on

infra — below, under

intra — among, between (two objects)

per — through, via 2) by (means of)

post — after (time), behind (place)

sub (to the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”) — under

super, supra — above, over

#### Other words

aditus, us m — aditus

antrum, i n — antrum, cave

auricularis, e — auriculare

difficilis, e — difficult

flavus, a, um — yellow

medulla, ae f — medulla

oblongatus, a, um — oblongata (medulla)

### English-Latin vocabulary

#### Prepositions

above — super, supra

after — post

among (more than two objects) — inter

around — circum

before — ante

behind — post

between (two objects) — inter

by (means of) — per

during — ad

for — ad

in — in (to the question “where to?”)

in front of — ante

inside — intra

into — in (to the question “where to?”)

on — in (to the question “where to?”)  
 round — see around  
 to — ad  
 through — per  
 under — infra, sub (to the question “where to?”)

### Other words

ascending — ascendens, ntis  
 childbirth — partus, us m  
 cough — tussis, is f  
 death — mors, mortis f  
 leg — pes, pedis m  
 operation — operatio, ōnis f  
 use — usus, us m

## Lesson 12

### Ablative singular and plural of nouns and adjectives. Prepositions used with the ablative

#### § 61. ABLATIVE AND ITS FORMATION

Ablative is the Latin case reflecting different circumstances and conditions which characterize the indirect object (mood of the action, time, place, reason and so on).

Both nouns and adjectives get the Ablative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stems, as one may see in the table below:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Abl. sing. ending	Ablative singular form	Abl. plur. ending	Ablative plural form
I	f	vena cava	-ā	vena cava	-is	venis cavis
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-o	ramo dextro sulco palatīno	-is	ramis dextris sulcis palatīnis
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum		ganglio otīco septo longo		gangliis otīcis septis longis
III	m	margo anterior	-e (-i)	marginē anteriōre	-ībus	marginībus anteriorībus
		canālis nutriens		canāle nutrienti		canalībus nutrientībus
	f	pars laterālis	-e (-i)	parte laterāli	-ībus	partībus lateralībus
n	basis simplex	basi simplici		basībus simplicībus		
		rete capillāre		reti capillāri		retībus
		crus posterius		crure posteriōre		capillarībus crurībus

						posterioribus
IV	m	processus	-u	processu	-ibus	processibus
	n	cornu	-u	cornu		cornibus
V	f	facies	-e	facie	-ēbus	faciēbus

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns and adjectives in the Ablative singular can get endings **-e** or **-i**.

The ending **-i** is added to the stem of:

1. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular (we have already mentioned these nouns in the previous lessons): *animal*, *ālis* n — *animāli*; *calcar*, *āris* n — *calcāri*; *rete*, *is* n — *reti*.

2. Four feminine nouns: *pelvis*, *is* f *pelvis* — *pelvi*; *febris*, *is* f *fever* — *febri*; *tussis*, *is* f *cough* — *tussi*.

3. Feminine nouns with the ending **-sis**: *basis*, *is* f *base* — *basi*.

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the positive degree as well as participles: *brevis*, *e* — *brevi*; *capillāris*, *e* — *capillāri*; *simplex*, *icis* — *simplīci*; *fluctuans*, *ntis* — *fluctuanti*.

The ending **-e** is added to the stem of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the first three groups of the explained above rules, — see, e. g., in the table the nouns *canālis*, *margo*, *pars*, *crus*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the comparative degree, — see in the table the adjective *anterior*, *ius* and *posterior*, *ius*.

## § 62. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

Proposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
a, ab (before a vowel)	from	a sulco rhināli ab axe optīco	from rhinal sulcus from optical axis
cum	with	cum nervo faciāli cum febris continua	with facial nerve with continued fever
de	about	de ossibus cranii	about the skull bones
e (ex)	1) from (about the movement from within) 2) of, from (about material)	e canāle sacrāli e cavitāte abdominis ex fructibus Rosae e fibris elastīcis	from the sacral canal from the abdomen cavity of dog-rose fruits from elastic fibers
in	(when answering the question "where?") in, on	in cavitāte pleurāli in facie unguis	in the pleural cavity on the nail surface
pro	for	pro reti venōso guttae pro oculis	for venous network drops for eyes
sine	without	sine pancreate accessorio sine dentibus serotinis	without accessory pancreas without wisdom teeth
sub	(when answering the question "where?") under	sub cute capitis sub narcōsi locāli	under the skin of head under a local anesthesia

## § 63. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up the forms of the Ablative singular and plural:

accessory pancreas; continued fever; bony tissue; canine tooth; floating rib; inner base; left canal; lesser pelvis; long spur; lymphatic vessel; right region; sacral horn; short nerve; simple joint

2. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from Latin into English:

ab angūlo inferiōre scapūlae; a crista capītis costae; cum febris continua; de structurā partium corpōris humāni; de terminis generalibus; glandūlae sine ductibus; in facie unguis; in regionibus membri superiōris; pro reti venōso; sanguis ex vena pro analysi; sub musculis facialibus; sub tunica musculāri; tunica e textu connectivo

3. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from English into Latin:

about the abdominal muscles; a medicine from the forest plants; for external use; for nervous system; from the head to the feet; from the surface of knee; in the heart artery; in the thoracic vein; on the nose skin; under a local (general) anesthesia; with a wandering kidney; without upper wisdom teeth

## § 64. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 12

### Latin-English vocabulary

#### Prepositions used with the Ablative

a, ab — from

cum — with

de — about, of

e, ex — from, of

in (when answering the question “where?”) — in, on

pro — for

sine — without

sub (when answering the question “where?”) — under

#### Other words

connectivus, a, um — connective

continuus, a, um — continued

faciālis, e — facial

generālis, e — general

glandūla, ae f — gland

humānus, a, um — human

musculāris, e — muscular

scapūla, ae f — scapula

structūra, ae f — structure

terminus, i m — term

tunīca, ae f — layer, coat

### English-Latin vocabulary

anesthesia — anaesthesia, ae f  
continued — continuus, a, um  
forest — silvestris, e  
general — generālis, e  
local — locālis, e  
medicine — medicamentum, i n  
plant — planta, ae f  
wandering — migrans, ntis

## Lesson 13

### Prefixes in anatomical terminology

#### § 65. PREFIXATION IN THE WORD BUILDING

Prefixation is the way of word building by adding prefixes to the stem of nouns or adjectives. As a result new meanings of the word are received in which any additional circumstances characteristic of the noun or adjective arise, mainly in respect of space if it concerns anatomical terms, e. g.:

brachium, i n (brachium) + ante (before) → antebrachium, i n — antebrachium

cervicālis, e (cervical) + endo (within) → endocervicālis, e — endocervical

cutaneus, a, um (cutaneous) + sub (under) → subcutaneus, a, um — subcutaneous

#### § 66. PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Both Greek and Latin prefixes are widely used in anatomical terms. Some of them have the same meaning and in these cases choosing the prefix depends only on tradition of using this or that word in a certain term. In other cases, Greek and Latin prefixes don't duplicate the meaning of each other. According to this connection, we place Greek and Latin prefixes in two tables.

#### Greek and Latin prefixes with identical meaning

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
			above – under
above, over	epi-	super- supra-	epigastrium, i n — epigastrium superficiālis, e — superficial suprarenālis, e — suprarenal
below,	hypo-	infra-	hypoglossus, a um — hypoglossal

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
under		sub-	infraorbitālis, e — infraorbital sublinguālis, e — sublingual
before – behind			
after, behind	meta-	post-, retro-	metatarsus, i m — metatarsus postcavālis, e — postcaval retromandibulāris, e — retromandibular
inside – outside			
within	en-, endo-	intra-	encephālon, i n — brain endocervicālis, e — endocervical intracellularis, e — intracellular
outside, of	ecto-, exo-	extra	ectoderma, ātis n — ectoderm exoskelēton, i n — exoskeleton extracellulāris, e — extracellular
between or the middle part			
between or the middle part	dia-, di-, meso-, mes-	inter-	diastēma, ātis n — diastema mesoderma, ātis n — mesoderm mesencephālon, i n — mesencephalon, the midbrain intercostālis, e — intrecostal
together, joined			
together, joined	syn-, sym-	col-, com-, con-, cor-	synostōsis, is f — synostosis; symphŷsis, is f — symphysis; commissūra, ae f — commissure; collaterālis, e — collateral connectīvus, a, um — connective m.corrugātor, ōris m — corrugator
not, without			
absence, denying	a-, an- (before a vowel)	in-, im-, ir-	azygos (undeclinable) — azygous anonŷmus, a, um — innominate insensibīlis, e — insensible; impar, āris — impar; irregulāris, e — irregular
against, opposite			
against, opposite	anti-	contra-	antitrāgus, i m — antitragus anticorpus, ōris n — antibody contralaterālis, e — contralateral
from, away from			
away from	apo-	a-, ab-	apocrīnus, a, um — apocrine apophŷsis, is f — apophysis m. abductor, ōris m — abductor
around, round			
around	peri-	circum-	pericardium, i n — pericardium circumorālis, e — circumoral
through			
through	dia-	per-	diaphragma, ātis n — diaphragm perspiratio, ōnis f — perspiration
out of			
out, out of	ec-, ex-	e-, ex-	eccrīnus, a, um — eccrine effērens, ntis — efferent

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
			exostōsis, is f — exostosis excretorius, a, um — excretory

### Greek and Latin prefixes without mutual semantic duplication

Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Meaning	Latin examples and English equivalents
–	ad-, ac-, af-, ap-	adition, movement nearer	adrenālis, e — adrenal accessorius, a, um — accessory affērens, ntis — afferent appendix, ĩcis f — appendix
–	de-	1. removing 2. downward	m. detrūsor, ōris m — detrusor m. depressor, ōris m — depressor
–	dis-, dif-, di-	spreading	disseminātus, a, um — disseminated diffūsus, a, um — diffuse m. dilatator, ōris m — dilator
–	in-, im-	moving inward	infundibŭlum, i n — infundibulum impressio, ōnis f — impression
–	re-	again or repeated action	reactio, ōnis f — reaction recessus, us m — recessus, recess reuniens, ntis — reunient
para-		beside, near	paracervix, ĩcis f — paracervix paranasālis, e — paranasal

### § 67. GREEK AND LATIN NUMERALS AS PREFIXES

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
one	mono-	uni-	mononucleāris, e — mononuclear unicellulāris, e — unicellular
two	di-	bi-	digastrĭcus, a, um — digastric bifurcatio, ōnis f — bifurcation
three	tri-	tri-	trigōnum, i n — trigonum, triangle, trigone trigemĭnus, a, um — trigeminus
four	tetra-	quadri-	tetrāpus, ōdos — tetrapus quadrĭceps, ipĭtis — quadriceps
half	hemi-	semi-	hemispherium, i n — hemisphere semicanālis, is m — semicanal

### § 68. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English taking into consideration the meaning of prefixes:

adhesio interthalamĭca; apparātus respiratorius seu systēma respiratorium; circumferentia articulāris; dentes decidui; eminentia collaterālis; fibrae periventriculāres; glandŭla parotidea accessoria; impressio suprarenālis; lamella circumferentiālis externa; ligamenta metacarpalia interossea; mesocōlon transversum; muscŭlus bipennātus; ossa metatarsi; plexus submucōsus; processus intrajugulāris; sectiōnes mesencephalĭci; spatium retropharyngēum;

substantia perforāta interpedunculāris; symphŷsis intervertebrālis; synchondrōsis intraocipitālis; tractus paraventriculohypophysiālis; tragus et antitrāgus auriculāe; trigōnum cervicāle anterius; vena retromandibulāris

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and fill in the gaps with the most suitable Latin prefixes using, if necessary, Atlas of Human Anatomy:

arteria ...currens; arteria ...flexa scapūlae; canālis ...circulāris; ligamenta ...capsularia; muscūlus ...pressor angūli oris; muscūlus ...pennātus; nervus ...dūcens; orgāna oculi ...cessoria; recessus ...hepatīci; vas sanguineum ...fōrans; zona ...certa

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and fill in the gaps with the most suitable Greek prefixes using, if necessary, Atlas of Human Anatomy:

... cōlon descendens; ...condŷlus laterālis; fossa ...helīcis; ...gōnum habenūlae ...encephāli; glandūla ...statīca; glandūlae ...crinae; muscūlus ...gastrīcus; plexus ... gastrīcus; recessus ... tympanīcus; regio ...chondriāca; ... spherium cerebelli; spatium ...pharyngēum; tractus ... encephalīcus nervi trigemīni

4. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

accessory pancreatic duct; common interosseous artery; external intercostal muscles; fascia of forearm; interclavicular ligament; intermandibular suture; interlobar artery; intraglandular lymphatic node; interosseal nerves of leg; parapharyngeal space; paravesical fossa; preoccipital notch; semilunar folds of colon; submandibular gland; supraorbital veins; suprapleural membrane

## § 69. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 13

### Latin-English glossary

#### Nouns of the 1st declension

auriculā, ae f — auricle; pinna  
circumpherentia, ae f — circumference  
eminentia, ae f — eminence  
lamella, ae f — lamella

#### Nouns of the 2nd declension

antebrachium, i n — antebrachium, forearm  
antitrāgus, i m — antitragus  
diencephālon, i n — diencephalon  
hemispherium, i n — hemisphere  
mesencephālon, i n — mesencephalon  
mesocōlon, i n — mesocolon  
metatarsus, i m — metatarsus  
spatium, i n — space  
tragus, i m — tragus  
trigōnum, i n — trigone

#### Nouns of the 3rd declension



adhesio, ōnis f — adhesion  
antihēlix, ĭcis f; anthēlix, ĭcis f — antihelix (anthelix)  
symphŷsis, is f — symphysis  
synchondrōsis, is f — synchondrosis  
syndesmōsis, is f — syndesmosis

#### **Nouns of the 4th declension**

apparātus, us m — apparatus  
recessus, us m — recess

#### **Adjectives of the 1st and 2nd declensions**

bipennātus, a, um — bipennate  
biventer, tra, trum — two-bellied  
deciduus, a, um — deciduous  
digitātus, a, um — digitate  
endocrīnus, a, um — endocrine  
epitympanīcus, a, um — epitympanic  
incertus, a, um — incerta(zona)  
interosseus, a, um — interosseal, interosseous  
interthalamīcus, a, um — interthalamic  
hypochondriācus, a, um — hypochondriac  
hypogastrīcus, a, um — hypogastric  
mesencephalīcus, a, um — mesencephalic

#### **Adjectives of the 3rd declension**

circumferentiālis, e — circumferential  
collaterālis, e — collateral  
extracapsulāris — extracapsular  
interpedunculāris, e — interpeduncular  
intervertebrālis, e — intervertebral  
intrajugulāris, e — intrajugular  
intraoccipitālis, e — intraoccipital  
metacarpālis, e — metacarpal  
pancreatīcus, a, um — pancreatic  
paraventriculohypophysiālis, e — paraventriculohypophysial  
periventriculāris, e — periventricular  
retromandibulāris, e — retromandibular  
semicirculāris, e — semicircular  
suprarenālis, e — suprarenal

#### **English-Latin vocabulary**

forearm — antebrachium, i n  
interclavicular — interclaviculāris, e  
interlobar — interlobāris, e  
intermandibular — intermandibulāris, e

interosseous — interosseus, a, um  
intercostal — intercostālis, e  
intraglandular — intraglandulāris, e  
parapharyngeal — parapharyngeālis, e  
paravesical — paravesicālis, e  
preoccipital — preoccipitālis, e  
semilunar — semilunāris, e  
submandibular — submandibulāris, e  
supraorbital — supraorbitālis, e  
suprapleural — suprapleurālis, e

### § 70. MODEL (SAMPLE) OF THE FINAL TEST IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

1. *Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:*

1) paries anterior gastris; 2) vestibulum oris; 3) margo liber unguis;  
4) pecten ossis pubis; 5) partes corpōris humāni; 6) plexus cavernōsi conchārum;  
7) ostia venārum pulmonalium.

2. *Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:*

1) deep vein of the right leg; 2) teres minor muscle; 3) groove for inferior petrosal sinus; 4) surface of incisor tooth; 5) planes, lines and regions; 6) heads of the true, false and floating ribs; 7) eyebrows and eyelashes.

3. *Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:*

1) by means of the long canal; 2) through the abdomen; 3) with a wandering kidney; 4) for nervous system; 5) glands without ducts.

**To cope with this final test you have to review (revise) thoroughly every home task because all the terms of this test have been taken from your exercises. But the most effective way to success is your thorough learning and preparation for every lesson during the time of your studies.**

## Latin-english vocabulary

### A

**a, ab (Abl)** from  
**accessorius, a, um** accessory  
**acusticus, a, um** auditory  
**ad (Acc.)** 1) to; 2) for; 3) during  
**adhesio, ōnis f** adhesion  
**adiposus, a, um** fat  
**aditus, us m** aditus  
**ala, ae f** wing  
**alāris, e** alar  
**alveolāris, e** alveolar  
**ampullāris, e** ampullary  
**analýsis, is f** analysis  
**anatomicus, a, um** anatomical  
**angulus, i m** angle  
**ante (Acc.)** 1) before (time);  
2) in front of (place)  
**antebrachium, i n** antebrachium,  
forearm  
**anterior, ius** anterior  
**antihēlix, ĩcis f; anthēlix,**  
**ĩcis f** antihelix (anthelix)  
**antitrāgus, i m** antitragus  
**antrum, i n** antrum, cave  
**apex, ĩcis m** apex, top  
**apparātus, us m** apparatus  
**appendix, ĩcis f** appendix  
**arachnoideus, a um** arachnoid  
**arbor, ōris f** tree  
**arbor vitae** arbor vitae  
**arcus, us m** arch  
**arteria, ae f** artery  
**arteriōsus, a um** arterial  
**articulāris, e** articular  
**articulatio, ōnis f** joint  
**atlas, ntis m** atlas (the first cervical  
vertebra)

**auditorius, a, um** auditory  
**auricūla, ae f** auricle; pinna  
**auricularis, e** auricular  
**auris, is f** ear  
**axis, is m** axis

### B

**basis, is f** base  
**biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um)** gall  
(+noun)  
**bipennātus, a, um** bipennate  
**biventer, tra, trum** two-bellied  
**brevis, e** short  
**bulbus, i m (ocūli)** eyeball

### C

**cadāver, ěris n** cadaver (dead body)  
**calicūlus, i m (gustatorius)** bud  
**canālis, is m** canal  
**cancer, cri m** cancer  
**canīnus, a um (dens)** canine (tooth)  
**capsūla, ae f** capsule  
**caput, ĩtis n** head  
**cardiācus, a, um** cardiac  
**carotīcus, a, um** carotid  
**cartilāgo, ĩnis f** cartilage  
**cauda, ae f** tail  
**cavernōsus, a, um** cavernous  
**cavitas, ātis f** cavity  
**celer, ěris, ěre** rapid, quick (pulse)  
**cerebellum, i n** cerebellum  
**cerebrālis, e** cerebral  
**cervicālis, e** cervical  
**cervix, ĩcis f** cervix  
**ciliāris, e** ciliary  
**circum (Acc.)** around, round  
**circumferentiālis, e** circumferential  
**circumferentia, ae f** circumference

**coccygēus, a, um** coccygeal  
**coccyx, ygis m** coccyx, coccygeal bone  
**cochleāris, e** cochlear  
**collaterālis, e** collateral  
**communīcans, ntis** communicative  
**compositus, a, um** complex  
**concha, ae f** concha (shellshaped hole)  
**connectīvus, a, um** connective  
**continuus, a, um** continued  
**contra (Acc.)** against, for (cough)  
**cor, cordis n** heart  
**cornu, us n** horn, hornshaped process  
**corpus, ōris n** body  
**cortex, ĩcis m** cortex (crust)  
**costa, ae f** rib  
**costālis, e** costal  
**craniālis, e** cranial  
**cranium, i n** skull  
**crista, ae f** crest  
**crus, cruris n** 1) shank, leg;  
 2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle);  
 3) bundle (of myocardium)  
**cum (Abl.)** with  
**cutis, is f** skin

## D

**de (Abl.)** about, of  
**deciduus, a, um** deciduous  
**dens, dentis m** tooth  
**dens canīnus** canine tooth  
**dens deciduus** deciduous tooth  
**dens incisīvus** incisor tooth  
**dens molāris** molar tooth  
**dens permānens** permanent tooth  
**dens premolāris** premolar tooth  
**dens sapientiae** wisdom tooth  
**dentālis, e** dental  
**dexter, tra, trum** right  
**diamēter, tri f** diameter

**diaphragma, ātis n** diaphragm  
**diencephālon, i n** diencephalon  
**difficīlis, e** difficult  
**digastrīcus, a, um** digastric  
**digitātus, a, um** digitate  
**digītus, i m** finger, toe  
**distālis, e** distal  
**dorsālis, e** dorsal  
**ductus, us m** duct  
**duodēnum, i n** duodenum  
**dura mater** dura mater  
 (the outermost meninx of the brain)  
**durus, a, um** solid

## E

**e, ex (Abl.)** from, of  
**eminētia, ae f** eminence  
**encephālon i n** brain  
**endocrīnus, a, um** endocrine  
**et** and  
**epitympanīcus, a, um** epitympanic  
**externus, a, um** external  
**extracapsulāris** extracapsular

## F

**faciālis, e** facial  
**facies, ēi f** face, surface  
**fascia, ae f** fascia  
**fascia lata** fascia lata  
**fauces, ium f** fauces  
**febris, is f** fever  
**felleus, a, um (= biliaris, e)** gall (+noun)  
**femīna, ae f** woman  
**femur, ōris n** femur, thigh (bone)  
**fibra, ae f** fibre  
**fibrōsus, a, um** fibrous  
**flavus, a, um** yellow  
**forāmen, ĩnis n** opening  
**fossa, ae f** fossa (little hole)  
**frontālis, e** frontal

## G

**ganglion, i n** nervous node  
**gaster, tris f** stomach  
**gemma, ae f** bud  
**generālis, e** general  
**genitālis, e** genital  
**gingīva, ae f** gingiva, gum  
**glandūla, ae f** gland  
**glomus, ěris n** a cluster of blood vessels, glomus  
**gustatorius, a, um** taste (+noun)

## H

**hemispherium, i n** hemisphere  
**hepar, ātis n** liver  
**hepatīcus, a, um**  
**homo, ĩnis m** man  
**humānus, a, um** human  
**hyoideus, a, um** hyoid, sublingual (bone)  
**hypochondriācus, a, um**  
hypochondriac  
**hypogastrīcus, a, um** hypogastric  
**hypoglossus, a, um** hypoglossal, sublingual (nerve)

## I

**iliācus, a, um** iliac  
**impar, āris** impar, unpaired  
**impressio, ōnis f** impression  
**imus, a, um** imus (ima), the lowest  
**in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”,**  
Russian “куда?”) in, into, on  
**in (Abl., when answering the question “where?”,**  
Russian “где?”) in, on  
**incertus, a, um** incerta (zona)  
**incisīvus, a, um (dens)** incisor  
**incisūra, ae f** incisure, slit or notch  
**inferior, ius** inferior

**infra (Acc.)** below, under  
**inter (Acc.)** among, between (two objects)

**interclaviculāris, e** interclavicular  
**intercostālis, e** intercostal  
**interlobāris, e** interlobar  
**intermandibulāris, e**  
intermandibular  
**internus, a, um** internal  
**interosseus, a, um** interosseal, interosseous  
**interpedunculāris, e** interpeduncular  
**interthalamīcus, a, um** interthalamic  
**intervertebrālis, e** intervertebral  
**intra (Acc.)** inside, in  
**intraglandulāris, e** intraglandular  
**intrajugulāris, e** intrajugular  
**intraoccipitālis, e** intraoccipital  
**inversus, a, um** inverse  
**iris, ĩdis f** iris (central part of the eye)

## J

**jugum, i n** yoke

## L

**labium, i n** lip  
**lamella, ae f** lamella  
**larynx, yngis m** larynx  
**latus, a, um** broad  
**liber, ěra, ěrum** free  
**ligamentum, i n** ligament  
**lingua, ae f** tongue  
**longissīmus, a, um** the longest  
**longitudinālis, e** longitudinal  
**longus, a, um** long  
**lumbālis, e** lumbar  
**lymphatīcus, a, um** lymphatic

## M

**magnus, a, um** large (vein), magnus (m. adductor), great (nerve)  
**major, jus** major, greater, larger

**mandibŭla, ae f** lower jaw, mandible

**manus, us f** hand

**margo, ĩnis m** margin, border

**massēter, ēris m** see below

m. masseter

**mastoideus, a, um** mastoid

**mater, tris f** mater (cerebral coat)

**maxilla, ae f** maxilla, upper jaw

**meātus, us m** meatus (passage)

**medulla, ae f** medulla

**membrum, i n** limb

**mesencephālicus, a, um**

mesencephalic

**mesencephālon, i n** mesencephalon

**mesocōlon, i n** mesocolon

**metacarpālis, e** metacarpal

**metatarsus, i m** metatarsus

**minor, us** minor, lesser, smaller

**minĭmus, a, um** the least, minimus

**molāris, e (dens)** molar (tooth)

**musculāris, e** muscular

**muscŭlus, i m** muscle

**m. adductor, ōris m** adductor

(bringing muscle)

**m. arrector, ōris m** arrector

(muscle elevating hair)

**m. levātor, ōris m** levator

(elevating muscle)

**m. massēter, ēris m** masseter

**m. pronātor, ōris m** pronator

(muscle turning the forearm)

**m. rotātor, ōris m** rotātor

**m. sphincter, ēris m** sphincter

(compressing muscle)

**m. tensor, ōris m** tensor

(straining muscle)

## N

**nasālis, e** nasal

**nasus, i m** nose

**nervus, i m** nerve

**nucleus, i m** nucleus

**nomen, ĩnis n** name

## O

**oblongātus, a, um** rather long

**occipitālis, e** occipital

**ocŭlus, i m** eye

**operatio, ōnis f** operation

**orbĭta, ae f** orbit

**orgānon, i n** organ

**os, oris n** mouth

**os, ossis n** bone

**osseus, a, um** bony

**ossicŭlum, i n** ossicle

**ostium, i n** opening, orifice

**otĭcus, a, um** otic

## P

**palatĭnus, a, um** palatine

**palātum, i n** palate

**palpēbra, ae f** eyelid

**pancreatĭcus, a, um** pancreatic

**parapharyngeālis, e** parapharyngeal

**paraventriculohypophysĭalis, e**

paraventriculohypophysial

**paravesicālis, e** paravesical

**paries, ētis m** wall

**parotideus, a, um** parotid

**pars, partis f** part

**partus, us m** childbirth, delivery

**parvus, a, um** little, small

**pecten, ĩnis m** pecten (crest)

**pelvĭcus, a, um** pelvic

**pelvis, is f** pelvis

**per (Acc.) 1)** through, via;

2) by (means of)

**periventriculāris, e** periventricular

**permānens, entis (dens)** permanent

(tooth)

**pes, pedis m** foot

**petrōsus, a, um** stony

**phalanx, ngis f** phalanx

**pĭus, a, um (mater)** pia (mater)

**pilus, i m** hair  
**planta, ae f** sole  
**plexus, us m** plexus (network,  
 chiefly of veins or nerves)  
**plica, ae f** fold  
**porta, ae f** porta (gate of the liver)  
**post (Acc.)** after (time),  
 behind (place)  
**posterior, ius** posterior  
**premolāris, e (dens)** premolar  
 (tooth)  
**preoccipitālis, e** preoccipital  
**pro (Abl.)** for  
**processus, us m** process  
**profundus, a, um** deep  
**proprius, a, um** proper  
**pubes, is f** pubis  
**pulmo, ōnis m** lung  
**pulmonālis, e** pulmonary  
**pulsus, us m** pulse  
**pupilla, ae f** pupil  
**pyrāmis, ĩdis f** pyramid

## Q

**quadrātus, a, um** square, quadrate  
 (muscle), quadratus (pronator)

## R

**radix, ĩcis f** radix, root  
**ramus, i m** branch  
**recessus, us m** recess  
**rectum, i n** rectum  
**regio, ōnis f** region  
**ren, renis m** kidney  
**renālis, e** renal  
**respiratorius, a, um** respiratory  
**rete, is n** 1) rete (mirabile);  
 2) network (dorsal venous of hand)  
**retromandibulāris, e**  
 retromandibular  
**retropharyngēus, a, um**  
 retropharyngeal

**rima, ae f** fissure, opening  
**ruber, bra, brum** red

## S

**sacrālis, e** sacral  
**sanguis, ĩnis m** blood  
**saphēnus, a, um** saphenous  
**sapiens, ntis** intelligent, clever  
**sapientia, ae f** wisdom  
**scapŭla, ae f** scapula, shoulder blade  
**sectio, ōnis f** section  
**segmentum, i n** segment  
**semicirculāris, e** semicircular  
**semilunāris, e** semilunar  
**septum, i n** septum, dividing wall  
**seu** or  
**simplex, ĩcis** simple  
**sine (Abl.)** without  
**sinister, tra, trum** left  
**sinus, us m** sinus, hollow curvature  
 or cavity  
**situs, us m** site  
**spatium, i n** space  
**spina, ae f** spine  
**spinālis, e** spina  
**splanchnĭcus, a, um** splanchnic  
**squama, ae f** squamous part, scales  
**sternum, i n** sternum, breastbone  
**structŭra, ae f** structure  
**sub (Acc., when answering**  
 the question “where to?”,  
 Russian “куда?”; Abl.,  
 when answering the question  
 “where?”, Russian “где?”) under  
**sublinguālis, e** sublingual (except  
 for nerve and bone)  
**submandibulāris, e** submandibular  
**submucōsus, a, um** submucous  
**substantia, ae f** substance  
**sulcus, i m** sulcus, furrow or groove

**super, supra (Acc.)** above, over  
**superficiālis, e** superficial  
**superior, ius** superior  
**supraorbital** supraorbitālis, e  
**suprapleurālis, e** suprapleural  
**suprarenālis, e** suprarenal  
**suprēmus, a, um** supreme,  
the highest

**sutūra, ae f** suture  
**symphŷsis, is f** symphysis  
**synchondrōsis, is f** synchondrosis  
**syndesmōsis, is f** syndesmosis  
**systema, ātis n** system

## T

**temporālis, e** temporal  
**teres, ētis** round (except for foramen)  
**terminatio, ōnis f** ending  
**termīnus, i m** term  
**textus, us m** tissue  
**thoracīcus, a, um** thoracic  
**thorax, ācis m** thorax, chest  
**thyr(e)oideus, a, um** thyroid  
**tractus, us m** tract  
**tragus, i m** tragus  
**transverses, a, um** transverse  
**trigōnum, i n** trigone  
**tuber, ěris n** tuber, large rounded  
swelling  
**tubercŭlum, i n** tubercle,  
small rounded swelling

**tuberositas, ātis f** tuberosity

**tumor, ōris m** tumor  
(swelling, growth)

**tunīca, ae f** 1) layer, coat;  
2) membrane

**tympanicus, a, um** tympanic

## U

**unguis, is m** nail

**utērus, i m** uterus

## V

**vagīna, ae f (of muscle)** vagina,  
sheath

**vas, vasis n** vessel

**vena, ae f** vein

**venōsus, a, um** venous

**venter, tris m** belly (of the muscle)

**vermiformis, e** vermiform

**vertēbra, ae f** vertebra

**vertebrālis, e** vertebral

**vesīca, ae f** bladder

**vestibulāris, e** vestibular

**vestibŭlum, i n** vestibule

**vir, i m** man

**viscus, ěris n; usually Plur. viscēra,**  
**um n** viscera, inner organs

**vita, ae f** life

**vomer, ěris m** vomer



## English-latin vocabulary

### A

**abdomen** abdōmen, ĩnis n  
**abdominal** abdominālis, e  
**about** de (Abl.)  
**above** super, supra (Acc.)  
**accessory** accessorius, a, um  
**adductor** (muscūlus) adductor, ōris m  
**after** post (Acc.)  
**among (more than two objects)** inter (Acc.)  
**anesthesia** anaesthesia, ae f  
**angle** angŭlus, i m  
**anterior** anterior, ius  
**aorta** aorta, ae f  
**apex, top** apex, ĩcis m  
**arch** arcus, us m  
**around** circum (Acc.)  
**artery** arteria, ae f  
**articular** articulāris, e  
**ascending** ascendens, ntis  
**auricular** auricularis, e  
**atlas** atlas, antis m  
**auditory** auditorius, a, um

### B

**back** dorsum, i n  
**base** basis, is f  
**before** ante (Acc.)  
**behind** post (Acc.)  
**between (two objects)** inter (Acc.)  
**blood** sanguis, ĩnis m  
**body** corpus, ōris n  
**bone** os, ossis n  
**bony** osseus, a, um  
**border** margo, ĩnis m  
**brachial** brachiālis, e  
**brain** cerēbrum, i n  
**branch** ramus, i m  
**breast** mamma, ae f

**broadest** latissĭmus, a, um  
**bronchial** bronchiālis, e  
**bursa (pouch, sac)** bursa, ae f  
**by (means of)** per (Acc.)

### C

**canal** canālis, is m  
**cancer, cri m** cancer  
**canine (tooth)** canĭnus, a, um (dens)  
**cardiac** cardiācus, a, um  
**carotid** carotĭcus, a, um  
**cartilage** cartilāgo, ĩnis f  
**cava, cauae** cavus, a, um  
**cavity** cavĭtas, ātis f  
**cell** cellŭla, ae f  
**central** centrālis, e  
**cerebellum** cerebellum, I n  
**cervical** cervicālis, e  
**cervix** cervix, ĩcis f  
**chiasm** chiasma, ātis n  
**childbirth** partus, us m  
**ciliary** ciliāris, e  
**coccegeal** coccygēus, a, um  
**colon** colon, i n  
**column** columna, ae f  
**common** commŭnis, e  
**complex** composĭtus, a, um  
**conjoint** conjunctĭvus, a, um  
**constrictor (compressing muscle)**  
muscūlus constrictor, ōris m  
**continued** continuus, a, um  
**cord** fascicŭlus, i m  
**costal** costālis, e  
**cough** tussis, is f  
**cranial** craniālis, e  
**crest** crista, ae f  
**crus** crus, cruris n  
**culmen** culmen, ĩnis n  
**curvature** curvatŭra, ae f

**cuspl** valvūla, ae f

## D

**death** mors, mortis f

**deep** profundus, a, um

**dental** dentālis, e

**depressor (lowing muscle)** musculus depressor, ōris m

**diaphragm** diaphragma, ātis n

**digitus, digiti** digītus, i m

**distal** distālis, e

**dividing** divīdens, entis

**division** divisio, ōnis f

**dorsal** dorsālis, e

**duct** ductus, us m

**during** ad (Acc.)

## E

**ear** auris, is f

**endocrine** endocrīnus, a, um

**epigastric** epigastrīcus, a, um

**ethmoidal** ethmoidālis, e

**extensor (unbending muscle)** musculus extensor, ōris m

**external** externus, a, um

**eyebrow** supercilium, i n

**eyelash** cilium, i n

## F

**face** facies, ēi f

**false** falsus, a, um

**falx** falx, falcis f

**fascia** fascia, ae f

**fauces** fauces, ium f (plur.)

**fever** febris, is f

**fibrous** fibrōsus, a, um

**fibular (=peroneal)** fibulāris (=peronēus, a, um)

**fissure** fissūra, ae f

**flexor (bending muscle)** musculus flexor, ōris m

**floating** fluctuans, ntis

**fold** plica, ae f

**foot** pes, pedis m

**for** ad (Acc.), pro (Abl.)

**forāmen, ĩnis n opening**

**forearm** antebrachium, i n

**forest** silvestris, e

**forhead** sincĭput, ĩtis n

**fornix** fornix, ĩcis m

**forth** quartus, a, um

**fossa** fossa, ae f

**free** liber, ěra, ěrum

**from** a, ab( Abl.); e, ex (Abl)

**frontal** frontālis, e

## G

**gallbladder** vesĭca fellea (=vesĭca biliāris)

**ganglion, a cluster of nervous cells** ganglion, i n

**gastric** gastrīcus, a, um

**general** generālis, e

**girdle** cingŭlum, i n

**gland** glandŭla, ae f

**gluteal** glutēus, a, um

**great** magnus, a, um

**greater** major, jus

**groove** sulcus, i m

## H

**hallux** hallux, ūcis m

**hand** manus, us f

**head** caput, ĩtis n

**heart** cor, cordis n

**hepatic** hepaticŭs, a, um

**highest** suprēmus, a, um

**horn** cornu, us n

**hyoid** hyoideus, a, um

## I

**ima** imus, a, um

**impar** impar, āris

**in** in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”; Abl., when answering the question “where?”)

**incisive** incisīvus, a, um

**incisor** incisīvus, a, um

**incus** incus, ūdis f

**index (index finger)** index, ĭcis m

**inferior** inferior, ius

**in front of** ante (Acc.)

**inguinal** inguinalis, e

**inner** internus, a, um

**inside** intra (Acc.)

**intelligent** sapiens, entis

**interclavicular** interclaviculāris, e

**intercostal** intercostālis, e

**interlobar** interlobāris, e

**intermandibular** intermandibulāris, e

**internal** internus, a, um

**interosseal** interosseus, a, um

**interosseous** interosseus, a, um

**into** in ( Acc., when answering the question “where to?”)

**intraglandular** intraglandulāris, e

**iris** iris, ĭdis f

## J

**joint** articulatio, ōnis f

**jugular** jugulāris, e

## K

**kidney** ren, renis m

**knee** genu, us n

## L

**lacrimal** lacrimālis, e

**lactiferous** lactifērus, a, um

**large** magnus, a, um

**larynx** larynx, ngis m

**lateral** laterālis, e

**latissimus** latissĭmus, a, um

**left** sinister, tra, trum

**leg** pes, pedis m

**lesser** minor, us

**ligament** ligamentum, i n

**limb** membrum, i n

**line** linea, ae f

**lingual** linguālis, e

**lip** labium, i n

**liver** hepar, ātis n

**local** locālis, e

**long** longus, a, um

**longest** longissĭmus, a, um

**longitudinal** longitudinālis, e

**lower** inferior, ius

**lower jaw, mandible** mandibŭla, ae f

**lung** pulmo, ōnis m

**lymphatic** lymphaticŭs, a, um

## M

**magnus, magnum** magnus, a, um

**major** major, jus

**man** homo, ĩnis m

**mandible** mandibŭla, ae f

**margin** margo, ĩnis m

**mastoid** mastoideus, a, um

**meatus** meātus, us m

**medial** mediālis, e

**medicine** medicamentum, i n

**membrane** membrāna, ae f

**membranous** membranaceus, a, um

**middle** medius, a, um

**minimus** minĭmus, a, um

**minor** minor, us

**mirabile** mirabĭlis, e

**mobile** mobĭlis, e

**molar** molāris, e

**molar tooth** dens molaris

**mouth** os, oris n

**muscular** musculāris, e

**muscle** muscŭlus, i m

## N

**nail** unguis, is m

**nasal** nasālis, e  
**neck** cervix, īcis f  
**nerve** nervus, i m  
**nerve node** ganglion, i n  
**nervous** nervōsus, a, um  
**network** rete, is n  
**node** nodus, i m  
**nodule** nodūlus, i n  
**nose** nasus, i m  
**notch** incisūra, ae f  
**nuchal** nuchālis, e  
**nucleus** nucleus, i m

## O

**occipital** occipitālis, e  
**occiput** occīput, ītis n  
**on** in (Acc. to the question  
“where to?”, Abl. to the question  
“where?”)  
**opening** forāmen, īnis n  
**operation** operatio, ōnis f  
**optic** optīcus, a, um  
**ossicle** ossicūlum, i n  
**oval** ovālis, e

## P

**palate** palātum, i n  
**palatine** palatīnus, a, um  
**palatini (veli)** palatīnus, a, um  
**pancreas** pancreas, ātis n  
**pancreatis** pancreas, ātis n  
**parapharyngeal** parapharyngeālis, e  
**paravesical** paravesicālis, e  
**parenchyma** parenchŷma, ātis n  
**parietal** parietālis, e  
**part** pars, partis f  
**pectoral** pectorālis, e  
**pelvis** pelvis, is f  
**pelvic** pelvīcus, a, um  
**permanent** permānens, ntis  
**peroneal** peronēus, a, um  
**petrosal** petrōsus, a, um

**phalanx** phalanx, ngis f  
**pharynx** pharynx, ngis m  
**plane** planum, i n  
**plant** planta, ae f  
**plexus** plexus, us m  
**pollex, pollicis (thumb)** pollex,  
īcis m  
**posterior** posterior, ius  
**preoccipital** preoccipitālis, e  
**process** processus, us m  
**prominent** prominens, ntis  
**proper** proprius, a, um  
**pterygoid** pterygoideus, a, um  
**pulvinar** pulvīnar, āris n  
**pyramide** pyrāmis, īdis f

## R

**radix** radix, īcis f  
**rectum** rectum, i n  
**region** regio, ōnis f  
**renal** renālis, e  
**respiratory** respiratorius, a, um  
**rete** rete, is n  
**retina** retīna, ae f  
**rhomboid** rhomboideus, a, um  
**rib** costa, ae f  
**right** dexter, tra, trum  
**ring-shaped (=anular)** anulāris, e  
**root, radix** radix, īcis f  
**rotator (rotating muscle)** musculus  
rotātor, ōris m  
**round** see around

## S

**sacral** sacrālis, e  
**salivary** salivarius, a, um  
**saphenous** saphēnus, a, um  
**segment** segmentum, i n  
**semilunar** semilunāris, e  
**septum** septum, i n  
**short** brevis, e  
**sinus** sinus, us m

**simple** simplex, ĭcis  
**skin** cutis, is f  
**skull** cranium, i n  
**small** parvus, a, um  
**smaller** minor, us  
**soft** mollis, e  
**sole** planta, ae f  
**space** spatium, i n  
**sphenoidal** sphenoidālis, e  
**splanchnic** splanchnĭcus, a, um  
**spleen** lien, ēnis m  
**spur** calcar, āris n  
**squamous** squamōsus, a, um  
**sternal** sternālis, e  
**sternum** **sternum**, i n  
**stomach** gaster, tris f  
**stony** petrōsus, a, um  
**stroma** stroma, ātis n  
**sublingual** sublinguālis, e  
**submandibular** submandibulāris, e  
**superficial** superficiālis, e  
**superior, upper** superior, ius  
**supraorbital** supraorbitālis, e  
**suprupleural** suprupleurālis, e  
**surface** facies, ēi f  
**suture** sutūra, ae f  
**system** systēma, ātis n

## T

**tail** cauda, ae f  
**tegmen** tegmen, ĭnis n  
**temporal** temporālis, e  
**tendon** tendo, ĭnis m  
**tensor (straining muscle)** musculus  
     tensor, ōris m  
**term** termĭnus, i m  
**thalamus** thalāmus, i m  
**thigh** femur, ōris n  
**third** tertius, a, um  
**thoracic** thoracĭcus, a, um  
**thorax** thorax, ācis m  
**through** per (Acc.)

**thyroid** thyr(e)oideus, a, um  
**tissue** textus, us m  
**to ad** (Acc.)  
**tongue** lingua, ae f  
**tooth** dens, dentis m  
**top** apex, ĭcis m  
**transverse** transversus, a, um  
**tree** arbor, ōris f  
**trochanter** trochanter, ēris m  
**true** verus, a, um  
**trunk** truncus, i m  
**tympanic** tympanĭcus, a, um

## U

**under** infra (Acc.); sub (Acc. to  
     the question “where to?”, Abl. to  
     the question “where?”)  
**upper** superior, ius  
**upper jaw, maxilla** maxilla, ae f  
**ureter** urēter, ēris m  
**use** usus, us m

## V

**vein** vena, ae f  
**velum (curtain)** velum, i n  
**vena (vein)** vena, ae f  
**venae see vena**  
**venous** venōsus, a, um  
**ventricle** vertricŭlus, i m  
**vertebra** vertēbra, ae f  
**vertebral** vertebrālis, e  
**vessel** vas, vasis n  
**vomer** vomer, ēris m

## W

**wall** paries, ētis m  
**wandering** migrans, ntis  
**wisdom** sapientia, ae f

## Z

**zygomatic** zygomatĭcus, a, um

**PART III**  
**PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY**

**Lesson 14**  
**Introduction to latin pharmaceutical terminology**

**§ 71. GENERAL INFORMATION**  
**ON LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY**

The words pharmacist, pharmaceutical, pharmacy etc. originate from the ancient Greek word *pharmakon*, i. e. drug, medicine. Historically, the names of drugs and their component parts as well as the names of drug forms and some other pharmaceutical terms, particularly in medical prescriptions, are given in Latin. Nowadays, the use of Latin in the pharmaceutical practice of every country depends on its national tradition and other factors. Namely, the tradition of using Latin both in drug names and medical prescriptions exists in Russia, the Republic of Belarus, the Ukraine and some other European countries.

To Latin pharmaceutical terms belong:

1. Names of drugs: *Amidopyrīnum* (amidopyrin), *Corvalōlum* (corvalol), *Streptocīdum* (streptocide).

2. Names of medical plants: *Belladonna* (belladonna), *Digitālis* (foxglove), *Quercus* (oak).

3. Names of chemical elements: *Kalium* (potassium), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Sulfur* (sulphur).

4. Adjectives: *Mentha piperīta* (pepper mint), *Species antiasthmaticae* (antiasthmatic species), *Suppositoria vaginalia* (vaginal suppositories).

5. Names of drug forms: *Unguentum Tetracyclīni* (ointment of tetracycline), *Tabulettae Myelosāni* (tablets of myelosan), *Tinctūra Menthae* (tincture of mint).

6. Names of the parts of medical plants: *Tinctūra radīcis Valeriānae* (tincture of valerian root), *Herba Valeriānae* (herb of valerian), *Flores Chamomillae* (flowers of matricary).

7. Supplementary nouns and adjectives (mainly in medical prescriptions): *dosis* (dose), *numērus* (number), *talis* (such).

Now let us systematize the use of capital and small letters in Latin pharmaceutical terms.

**The capital letter** is used:

1) In the names of drugs: *Codeīnum* (codeine), *Furacilīnum* (furacilin), *Validōlum* (validol).

2) In the names of medical plants: *Calendūla* (calendula), *Eucalyptus* (eucalyptus), *Frangūla* (buckhorn).

3) In the names of chemical elements: *Ferrum* (iron), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Zincum* (zinc).

**Attention!** Nouns of these three groups are written with capital letter in the dictionary form too: Codeīnum, i n; Calendūla, ae f; Ferrum, i n.

4) As the first letter of a name of the drug form, if this name is the first in a multiword term: Linimentum Streptocīdi (liniment of streptocide), Species antiasthmaticae (antiasthmatic species), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian).

5) As the first letter of a name of the plant component, if this name is the first in a multiword term: Herba Valeriānae (herb of valerian), Flores Chamomillae (flowers of matricary), Folia Menthae piperītae (mint pepper leaves).

**The small letter** is used:

1. In adjectives both in the structure of a term and in the dictionary form: Mentha **piperīta** (piper mint) — piperītus, a, um;

Acīdum **acetylsalicylicum** (acetylsalicylic acid) — acetylsalicylicus, a, um.

2. In drug form names or plant component names being not the first in the term structure as well as in the dictionary form of these names:

Acīdum acetylsalicylicum in **tabulettis** (acetylsalicylic acid in tablets) — tabuletta, ae f; acetylsalicylicus, a, um.

Decoctum **corticis** Quercus (decoction of oak bark) — cortex, icis m; decoctum, i n.

3. If a drug form name or a plant component name is used without drug names:

unguenta et linimenta (ointments and liniments); solutio ad usum externum (solution for external use); pulvėres composīti (compound powders); folia et flores (leaves and flowers); radix et rhizōma (root and rhizome)

4. In constructions with a preposition indicating prescription, order of drug use or way of storage:

Solutio Furacilīni ad **usum externum** (solution of furacilin for external use); Tabulettae contra **tussim** (tablets for cough); Thea medicinālis pro **infantibus** (medicinal tea for children); Mixtio pro **inhalationibus** in **vitro nigro** (mixture for inhalation in dark phial)

Some other peculiarities of using capital or small letter in pharmaceutical terms will be further described in the subsequent parts of this textbook.

## § 72. THE DRUG FORM NAMES

Every drug is produced in a physical form most adequate for use. Traditionally, three main forms are used: solid, semisolid and liquid.

### **Solid forms:**

Dragées (dragée, a French word which is used without latinization in plural and has no Latin dictionary form) — drops

Granūla (**granulum, i n**) — granules of different form containing drug substances

Pilūlae (**pilūla, ae f**) — pills, small balls with a drug substance

Pulvĕres (**pulvis, ĕris m**) — powders

Species (**species, ĕrum f**, only Plural form) — species, mixture of different parts of medicinal plants

Tabulettae (**tabuletta, ae f**) — tablets

Theae (**thea, ae f**) — teas

#### **Semisolid forms**

Emplastra (**emplastrum, i n**) — plasters

Pastae (**pasta, ae f**) — pastes, thick ointments

Suppositoria (**suppositorium, i n**) — suppositories

Unguenta (**unguentum, i n**) — ointments

#### **Liquid forms**

Decocta (**decoctum, i n**) — decoctions

Emulsa (**emulsum, i n**) — emulsions

Extracta (**extractum, i n**) — extracts

Guttae (**gutta, ae f**) — drops (of liquids)

Infūsa (**infūsum, i n**) — infusions

Linimenta (**linimentum, i n**) — liniments

Mixtūrae (**mixtūra, ae f**) — mixtures

Mucilagĭnes (**mucilāgo, ĩnis f**) — mucilages, liquids containing mucous substances

Olea (**oleum, i n**) — oils

Sirūpi (**sirūpus, i m**) — syrups

Solutiōnes (**solutio, ōnis f**) — solutions

Tinctūrae (**tinctūra, ae f**) — tinctures

#### **Some other drug forms**

Aĕrosōla (**aĕrosōlum, i n**) — aerosols

Capsūlae (**capsūla, ae f**) — capsules

Lamellae (=Membranūlae) ophthalmĭcae (**lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f**) — ophthalmic films with drug

### **§ 73. COMPONENTS OF MEDICAL PLANTS**

cortex, ĩcis m — cortex, bark

flos, floris m — flower

folium, i n — leaf

fructus, us m — fruit

herba, ae f — herb

radix, ĩcis f — root

rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome

semen, ĩnis n — seed

### **§ 74. MEDICINAL PLANTS IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS**

Medicinal plant names are mostly nouns of the 1st declension:

Chamomilla, ae f — matricary

Frangūla, ae f — buckhorn

Some names are nouns of the 2nd declension:

Leonūrus, i m — motherwort



Millefolium, i n — milfoil

Less numerous are nouns of the 3rd declension:

Digitālis, is f — foxglove

Adonis, ĩdis m, f — Adonis

Very rarely nouns of the 4th declension are used: Quercus, us f — oak

One should remember that names of trees are always feminine:

Eucalyptus, i f — eucalypt

Quercus, us f — oak

Some plant names consist of a noun and an adjective:

Mentha piperĭta — pepper mint

Adonis vernālis — spring Adonis

Medical plant names are used:

1. In the names of liquid drug forms: Tinctūra Valeriānae — tincture of valerian; Decoctum cortĭcis Quercus — decoction of oak bark.

2. In the labels of different packages containing the components of medical plants:

Folia Urtĭcae — leaves of nettle; Semen Lini — seed of flax

3. As a component of the medical prescription:

Recĭpe: Extracti Aloĕs fluĭdi 1 ml — Take: Liquid extract of aloe 1 ml

Recĭpe : Cortĭcis Crataegi 30,0 — Take: Cortex of hawthorn 30,0

As we see, the name of a plant component is always placed before a plant name.

## § 75. THE MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE OF ONE-WORD LATIN DRUG NAMES

One- word drug names usually consist of a noun root, a suffix ( **-ĭn-** is the most common, then follow suffixes **-ol-** and **-ĭd-**), and, finally, the most common ending — **um**:

Codeĭnum — codeine; Dibazōlum — dibazol; Saluzĭdum — saluzid

In drug names specific Greek and Latin noun roots expressing certain pharmaceutical information are widely used. The knowledge of these most common morphological elements enables to write correctly complicated drug names, which is one of the main tasks of learning the pharmaceutical part of our subject. Let us memorize the first part of these morphological elements:

Morphological root	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
-cyclin-	antibiotics-tetracycline	Tetracyclĭnum	tetracycline
-cyclo-	making an effect on the metabolic processes	Cycloserĭnum	cycloserin
-menth-	product including mint	Menthōlum	menthol
-mycĭn-	antibiotics-streptomycin	Monomycĭnum	monomycin
-myco-	antimycotic, against fungi	Mycoseptĭnum	mycoseptin
-pyr-	influence on the body temperature	Antipyĕrĭnum	antipyridin
-strept-	different pharmaceutical effects	Streptocĭdum	streptocide

You should memorize prefixes of Greek origin used to construct a drug name:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
a-, an- (before a vowel)	denying, removing	Apressīnum Analgīnum	apressin analgin
anti-	acting against	antiasthmaticus	antiasthmatic
hyper-	increase, elevation	Hyperōlum	hyperol
hypo-	decrease, lowering	Hypothiazīdum	hypothiazid

## § 76. SOME RULES OF BUILDING MULTIWORD PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS

Every multiword Latin pharmaceutical term begins, as a rule, with a drug form name. Then, the drug name follows. If the drug form has an adjective, this adjective is the last in the term:

Extractum Crataegi fluīdum — liquid extract of hawthorn

Tabulettae Tetracyclīni obductae — coated tablets of tetracycline

Sometimes, the drug name is used without a form name, particularly if the prescription or way of storage is indicated:

Aether pro narcōsi — ether for narcosis

Cycloserīnum in capsūlis — cycloserin in capsules

Somatotropīnum humānum pro injectionībus — human somatotropin for injections

Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis — thyreoidin in tablets

Latin names of drugs with compound composition can be enclosed into quotation marks or inverted commas. But English equivalents of these names are used without quotation marks or inverted commas, compare:

Aërosolum “Camphomenum” — aerosol of camphomen

Suppositoria “Anaesthesolum” — suppositories of anaesthesol

In the vocabulary you can find indication with which nouns these specific signs are used.

## § 77. EXERCISES

1. *Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate it into English:*

Extractum Leonūri fluīdum; Linimentum Aloës; Rhizōma cum radicībus Valeriānae; Sirūpus ex fructībus Rosae; Solutio “Testosterōnum” pro injectionībus; Suppositoria vaginalia cum Synthomycīno; Tabulettae Aspirīni obductae; Tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; Unguentum Dibiomycīni ophthalmīcum

2. *Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:*

antiasthmatic species; coated tablets of tetracycline; decoction of oak bark; tincture of pepper mint; dry extract of belladonna; ether for narcosis; herb of spring Adonis; liquid extract of hawthorn; medicinal tea for children; mint pepper leaves; ointment of mycoseptin; powder of foxglove leaves; root and

rhizome of valerian; simple and compound powders; tablets of antipyrin; tincture of matricary flowers

## § 78. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 14

### Latin-English vocabulary

Aloë, ěs f — aloe  
Aspirīnum, i n — aspirin  
cum (Abl.) — with  
Dibiomycīnum, i n — dibiomycine  
ex (Abl.) — of  
Eucalyptus, i f — eucalypt  
extractum, i n — extract  
fluīdus, a um — liquid  
folium, i n — leaf  
fructus, us m — fruit  
injectio, ōnis f — injection  
Leonūrus, i m — motherwort  
linimentum, i n — liniment  
obductus, a, um — coated  
ophthalmīcus, a, um — ophthalmic  
radix, ĩcis f — root  
rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome  
sirūpus, i m — syrup  
suppositorium, i n — suppository  
Synthomycīnum, i n — synthomycin  
tabuleta, ae f — tablet  
tinctūra, ae f — tincture  
Testosterōnum, i n — testosterone  
unguentum, i n — ointment  
vaginālis, e — vaginal

### English-Latin vocabulary

Adonis — Adōnis, ĩdis m, f  
antiasthmātic — antiasthmāticus, a, um  
antipyrin — Antipyrīnum, i n  
bark — cortex, ĩcis m  
belladonna — Belladonna, ae f  
children — infantes, ium m, f  
coated — obductus, a, um  
compound — composītus, a, um  
decoction — decoctum, i n  
dry — siccus, a, um

ether — aether, ěris m  
extract — extractum, i, n  
flower — flos, floris m  
for — pro (+Abl.)  
foxglove— Digitālis, is f  
hawthorn — Cratāegus, i f  
herb — herba, ae f  
leaf — folium, i n  
liquid — fluīdus, a, um  
matricary — Chamomilla, ae f  
medicinal — medicinālis, e  
mint — Mentha, ae f  
narcosis— narcōsis, is f  
oak — Quercus, us f  
ointment — unguentun, i n  
pepper — piperītus, a, um  
powder — pulvis, ěris m  
rhizome — rhizōma, ātis n  
root — radix, ĩcis f  
simple— simplex, ĩcis  
species — species, ěrum f (only plur.)  
spring — vernālis, e  
tablet — tabuletta, ae f  
tea — thea, ae f  
tertracycline — Tetracyclīnum, i n  
valerian — Valeriāna, ae f

## **Lesson 15**

### **Latin in the medical prescription.**

#### **Standard verb forms indicating order and instructions**

#### **in making up the latin part of prescription.**

#### **General rules of making up the latin part of prescription**

#### **§ 79. CURRENT USE OF LATIN IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION**

The use of Latin medical prescription nowadays is still common in many states of Europe, particularly in the countries of the former USSR including the Republic of Belarus and the Russian Federation. That is why the rules of proper use of Latin in medical prescriptions are obligatory in medical university syllabus of these states. Latin inscriptions are written on the labels of drug packing, reference books, and in medical prescriptions.

## § 80. THE IMPERATIVE VERB FORMS USED IN A SIMPLE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The Latin part of a medical prescription begins with the Imperative form *Recīpe: Take:.* This word is addressed to a pharmacist who has to prepare and to hand over a drug to a person.

If the drug is produced by a pharmaceutical plant then the prescription includes the name of this drug which is written after *Recīpe:*

*Recīpe: Unguenti Tetracyclini ophthalmici 10, 0*

*Take: Ointment of ophthalmic tetracycline 10, 0*

*Recīpe: Extracti Crataegi fluidi 25 ml*

*Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml*

After that in a new line two standard Imperative verb forms follow:

*Da. (Give) and Signa (Write on the label)* so that the full prescription gets the following forms:

*Recīpe: Unguenti Tetracyclīni 10*

*Da. Signa:*

*Take: Ointment of tetracycline 10, 0*

*Give. Write on the label:*

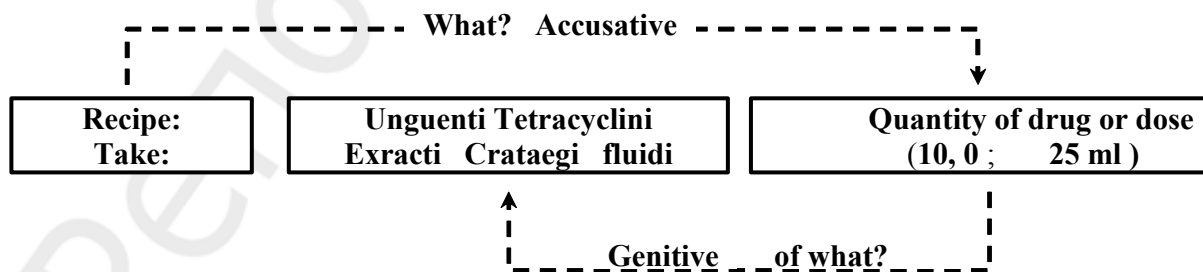
*Recīpe: Extracti Crataegi fluidi 25 m*

*Da. Signa:*

*Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml*

*Give. Write on the label:*

One should pay attention to the fact that both the drug form and the drug name after *Recīpe* are in the Genitive form. This case form depends on the quantity of the drug administered mainly in gram amounts (indicated in decimal points without the abbreviation *gr.*) and milliliter amounts with the abbreviation *ml*:



After the standard expression *Signa* — Write on the label — goes the signature where the physician indicates the way of using the drug in the patient's native language.

So — from *Recīpe* to *Signa* — that is how the Latin part of a simple prescription, when the drug is kept in a drugstore in the prepared form, is written.

### § 81. THE CONJUNCTIVE FORMS IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The Imperative verb forms can be substituted (with some exception) for the Conjunctive mode forms. These Conjunctive forms are translated into English with the word combination “let it be” + Participle II:

Imperative form	English equivalent	Conjunctive form	English equivalent
Adde	Add	Addātur	Let it be added
Da	Give	Detur Dentur tales doses	Let it be given Let it be given of such doses
Misce	Mix	Misceātur	Let it be mixed
Repēte	Repeat	Repetātur	Let it be repeated
Signa	Write on the label	Signētur	Let it be labelled
Sterilīsa!	Sterilize!	Sterilisētur!	Let it be sterilized!

One should remember that the Imperative form *Recīpe* can never be replaced by the Conjunctive one.

The use of the Imperative or Conjunctive forms depends only on the physician writing a medical prescription. As to students, they are to be able to write correctly the grammar form of an order or an instruction according to the initial Latin or English verb form.

### § 82. THE STRUCTURE OF A COMPLEX MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

Sometimes the physician asks the pharmacist to prepare a drug in the pharmacy. In this case, he writes down all the components of this drug. Such a prescription is called a complex one. Naturally, in such a prescription the physician indicates some components to be mixed: *Misce* — *Mix*. He can also define more precisely for what purpose the mixture is necessary — that is for making some drug form. In this case, two forms are used: **fiat** for the nouns in singular and **fiant** for the nouns in plural:

*Misce, fiat pulvis* — Mix to make a powder

*Misce, fiant suppositoria vaginalia* — Mix to make vaginal suppositories

One should remember that the Imperative form *Misce* is only used in the combination with the forms *fiat* and *fiant*.

Sometimes, the physician indicates in which form and in what amount the drug is to be prepared. In this case, he writes down these standard forms:

*Da (Dentur) tales doses numēro ... in tabulettis (ampullis, capsulis etc)* — Give (Let be given) in such a dose amount... in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.).

If two or more components are taken in the same amount, the dose is indicated only after the latter one, and the adverb *ana* “of each” is written before this amount:

Recīpe: Corticis Frangūlae	Take: Cortex of buckthorn
Foliōrum Urtīcae ana 15, 0	Leaves of nettle of each 15, 0

Now, let us see some complex medical prescriptions with different standard phrases:

Recīpe: Sulfadimezīni	Take: Sulphadimezine
Streptocīdi	Streptocide
Synthomycīni ana 1,0	Synthomycin of each 1,0
Misce, fiat pulvis	Mix to make a powder
Detur Signetur:	Let it be given
	Let it be labelled:

Recīpe: Euphyllīni	Take: Euphylline
Butyri Cacao 2,0	Cocoa oil 2,0
Misce, fiat suppositorium	Mix to make a suppository
Da tales doses numēro 6	Give such a dose in the amount 6
Signa:	Write on the label:

### § 83. SOME PECULIARITIES OF QUANTITY EXPRESSION IN A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

Sometimes, the amount of oils or other liquids can be indicated in drops. The number of drops is written in Roman figures. If one drop is indicated, so the Accusative singular form *guttam* is used, if more than one, the Accusative plural form *guttas* is used:

Recīpe: Olei Menthae piperītae guttam I	Take: Mint pepper oil I drop
Recīpe: Olei Eucalypti guttas V	Take: Eucalypt oil V drops

In some cases, the physician doesn't indicate the dosage of a complex prescription component and lets the pharmacist determine the quantity of this component on his own. In this case, the standard expression *quantum satis* — in sufficient amount — is used:

Recīpe: Chinosōli 0,03	Take: Chinosol 0,03
Acīdi borīci 0,3	Boric acid 0,3
Tannini 0,06	Tannin 0,06
Olei Cacao quantum satis, fiat suppositorium vaginale	Cocoa oil in sufficient amount to make a vaginal suppository
Da tales doses numēro 6	Give such a dose in the amount 6
Signa:	Write on the label:

### § 84. SOME IMPORTANT RULES FOR MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

1. Every new line begins with capital letter.
2. Every first letter of the next new line is written strictly under the first letter of the previous one.
3. If the prescription text is to be continued in the next line, the first letter in the next line should begin under the fourth letter of the previous one.
4. Any correction in the prescription text is forbidden.

**§ 85. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS OF PLANT ORIGIN INDICATING ALKALOIDS AND GLYCOSIDES WITH DIFFERENT PHARMACEUTICAL EFFECTS**

<b>Morphological roots</b>	<b>Latin examples</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
-anth-	Galanthamīnum, i n Helianthus, i m	galanthamine sunflower
-eph-, -ephedr-, -phedr-	Ephatīnum, i n Ephedrīnum, i n Theophedrīnum, i n	ephatin ephedrin theophedrin
-glyc(y)-	Glycerīnum, i n Corglycōnum, i n Glycyrrhīza, ae f <b>Sed: Glucōsum, i n</b>	glycerin corglycon licorice <b>But: glucose</b>
-phyll-	Euphyllīnum, i n Platyphyllīnum, i n	euphylline platyphylline
-phyt	Phytīnum, i n Phytolysīnum, i n	phytin phytolysin
-stroph-	Strophanthus, i m Strophosānum, i n	strophanthus strophosan
-the(o)-	Theobromīnum, i n Theophyllīnum, i n	theobromine theophylline

**§ 86. EXERCISES**

1. *Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:*  
Capsūlae Phytomenadiōni; Emulsum olei Helianthi; Granūla Glycyrami;  
Pulvis Phytīni pro infantibus; Solutio Corglycōni in ampullis; Solutio Glucōsi  
pro injectionibus; Suppositoria cum Euphyllīno; Tabulettae “Theophedrinum”;  
Theophyllīnum in tabulettis

2. *Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:*  
aerosol of ephatin; dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of  
ichthyol; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of  
strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophylline;  
sublingual tablets of glycin

3. *Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as  
standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in the medical prescription;  
translate the texts of medical prescriptions into Latin:*

1. Take: Soluble streptocid 5,0

2. Take: Theophylline 0,2



Solution of glucose 10 % —  
100 ml  
Mix. Let it be sterilized!  
Give.  
Write on the label:

Cocoa oil 2,0  
Mix to make a rectal  
suppository  
Give.  
Write on the label:

3. Take: Tincture of strophanthus 5 ml  
Tincture of lily of the valley  
Tincture of valerian of each  
10 ml  
Let it be mixed  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

4. Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin  
1 % — 0,0005  
Let it be given in such a dose  
amount 20 in capsules  
Let it be labelled:

5. Take: Solution of strophanthine  
0,05 % — 1 ml  
Give in such a dose amount  
10 in ampoules  
Write on the label:

6. Take: Cortex of althea  
Cortex of licorice  
Seed of flax of each 10,0  
Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5  
Mix to make a species  
Give. Write on the label:

7. Take: Chloroform  
Sunflower oil of each 20 ml  
Mix to make a liniment  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

8. Take: Ichthyol 3,0  
Vaseline up to 30,0  
Mix to make an ointment  
Give.  
Write on the label:

## § 87. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 15

### Latin-English vocabulary

ampulla, ae f — ampoule  
capsūla, ae f — capsule  
Corglycōnum, i n — corglycon  
Glucōsum, i — glucose  
Glycyrāmum, i n — glycyram  
granūlum, i n — granule  
emulsum, i n — emulsion  
Euphyllīnum, i n — euphylline  
Helianthus, i m — sunflower  
infans, ntis m, f — child  
Phytīnum, i n — phytin  
Phytomenadiōnum, i n — phytomenadion  
pulvis, ěris m — powder

solutio, ōnis f — solution  
tabuleta, ae f — tablet  
Theophedrīnum, i n — theophedrin  
Thophyllīnum, i n — theophylline

### English-Latin vocabulary

aerosol — aërosōlum, i n  
althea — Althaea, ae f  
ampoule — ampulla, ae f  
capsule — capsūla, ae f  
chloroform — Chloroformium, i n  
cocoa — Cacāo (without a dictionary form)  
extract — extractum, i n  
ephatin — Ephatīnum, i n  
emulsion — emulsum, i n  
eucalyptus — Eucalyptus, i f  
flax — Linum, i n  
glucose — Glucōsum, i n  
glyceric — glycerinōsus, a, um  
glycin — Glycīnum, i n  
ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n  
leave — folium, i n  
licorice — Glycyrrhīza, ae f  
lily of the valley — Convallaria, ae f  
liniment — linimentum, i n  
nitroglycerin — Nitroglycerīnum, i n  
oil — oleum, i n  
oily — oleōsus, a, um  
pectoral — pectorālis, e  
phytomenadion — Phytomenadiōnum, i n  
rectal — rectālis, e  
seed — semen, űnis n  
soluble — solubīlis, e  
solution — solutio, ōnis f  
species — species, ērum f (only plural)  
streptocide — Streptocīdum, i n  
strophanthine — Strophanthīnum, i n  
strophanthus — Strophanthus, i m  
sublingual — sublinguālis, e  
sunflower — Helianthus, i m

theophylline — Theophyllīnum, i n  
up to — ad  
vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n

## Lesson 16

### The use of the accusative of some pharmaceutical forms in the first line of a medical prescription

#### § 88. GENERAL INFORMATION ON THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The Accusative of some pharmaceutical forms is used only in a simple medical prescription. This is the way of prescribing tablets, drops, suppositories, ophthalmic films, sponges for different medical purposes, aerosols. The name of these pharmaceutical forms is written in the Accusative singular or plural. The Latin drug name in the Nominative form is sometimes enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks, which are omitted in the English text, where in this case the common construction with preposition “of” is used. The amount of the prescribed drug is hereby not indicated in grams or in milliliters but is expressed by the word “numērus” (number) in the Ablative form (numēro) and a common figure. In the second line the standard verb forms are written:

Recīpe: Tabulettas “Antistrumīnum” numēro 50 Detur. Signetur:	Take: Tablets of antistrumin number 50 Let it be given Let it be labelled:
Recīpe: Tabulettas Aloēs obductas 0,05 numēro 20 Da Signa:	Take: Coated tablets of aloe number 20 Give. Write on the label:

As in English drug names inverted commas or quotation marks are not used, it is impossible when translating to find out which Latin equivalent drug name with these specific signs is to be written. That is why when translating from English into Latin we have to consult the dictionary and to find out whether the drug name is enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks or not. So, if we see in the dictionary: psoriasis (ointment) — Unguentum “Psoriasīnum”; antistrumin (tablets) — Tabulettae “Antistrumīnum”; Benspar (capsules) — Capsulae “Bensparum”, we know, how the Latin drug name is to be written correctly, for example:

Take: Capsules of benspar number 100 —	Reciĥe: Capsūlas “Benspar”
Give.	numĕro 100
Write on the label:	Da. Signa:

Now let us see in detail the use of different pharmaceutical forms in the Accusative.

### § 89. THE PRESCRIPTION OF TABLETS IN THE ACCUSATIVE FORM

The drug prescription in tablets may proceed in three forms.

In the first case after Reciĥe the Accusative singular form *Tabulettam* is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and the dose. In the second line of the prescription the instruction *Da* (*Dentur*) takes doses *numĕro...* in *tabulettis* is written and after that the standard verb form *Signa* (*Signetur*) follows:

Reciĥe: <i>Tabulettam Paracetamoli 0,3</i>	Take: Tablet of paracetamol 0,3
Da takes doses numero 6	Give such a dose in
in <i>tabulettis</i>	the amount 6 in tablets
Signa:	Write on the label:

In the second case after Reciĥe the Accusative plural form *Tabulettas* is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and figures indicating the amount of active medical substance of a tablet and, finally, the dosage expressed by the “numero” and a figure:

Reciĥe: <i>Tabulettas Paracetamōli 0,3</i>	Take: Tablets of paracetamol 0,3
numĕro 6	number 6
Da.	Give
Signa:	Write on the label:

But the same drug can be prescribed in a traditional form indicating the drug quantity, and that is the third way of drug prescribing in the tablet form. In this case after Reciĥe the drug name and its dose follow. In the second line the instruction *Da* (*Dentur*) takes doses *numĕro 6* in *tabulettis* and, finally, the standard form *Signa* (*Signetur*) are written:

Reciĥe: <i>Paracetamōli 0,3</i>	Take: Paracetamol 0,3
Da takes doses numĕro 6	Give such a dose in the
in <i>tabulettis</i>	amount 6 in tablets
Signa:	Write on the label:

It is absolutely imperative that every physician is to know all the ways of writing out medical prescriptions. But the choice of a prescription form is up to him.

### § 90. THE PRESCRIPTION OF DROPS IN THE ACCUSATIVE FORM

Drops (as the equivalent in Latin pharmaceutical terminology the French word “dragées” is used) are now prescribed mainly in the plural form. From the grammar point of view, the “dragées” is considered as Accusative depending on the word Recīpe, but as a French word, it has no case and dictionary form. The prescription regulations for drops are the following. After the Recīpe follow the form Dragées, the drug names in inverted commas (quotation marks) or in the Genitive form and the Ablative case numero with a figure indicating the dose:

Recipe: Dragées “Undevitum” numero 3	Take: Drops of undevit
Detur.	number 30
Signetur:	Let it be given
	Let it be labelled:

One should add that sometimes, an other order of drops prescription is used. In this case, after Recīpe the singular form Dragée is written with the drug name in the Genitive and a figure indicating the dose. In the second line follows the phrase Da (Dentur tales doses) numero...:

Recīpe: Dragée Diazolini 0,05	Take: Dragée of diazolin 0,05
Da tales doses numero 20	Give such a dose in the amount 20
Signa:	Write on the label:

### § 91. THE PRESCRIPTION OF OPHTHALMIC FILMS

Ophthalmic films are absorbable gelatin films containing drug substances. They are used instead of ophthalmic drops when keeping such a film under the eyelid at night.

The ophthalmic films are usually prescribed with the preposition “cum”. The prescription regulations for the ophthalmic films are the following. The verb Recīpe is followed by the Accusative plural forms lamellas (or membranulas) ophthalmicas, the drug name in the Genitive, the preposition “cum” with the active pharmaceutical component and the form *numero* with a figure. In the second and third lines the standard phrases Da (Dentur) tales doses numero ... and Signa (Signetur) are written:

Recipe: Lamellas ophthalmicas cum Novocaino numero 8
Da. Signa:
Take: Ophthalmic films with Novocain number 8
Give. Write on the label:

### § 92. THE PRESCRIPTION OF MEDICAL SPONGES

A pharmaceutical sponge is a porous substance saturated with a drug. It is applied to the necessary place and has antiseptic, haemostatic and other pharmaceutical effects. Pharmaceutical sponges are usually prescribed in plural form and in two variants.

1. The verb *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative plural form *Spongias*, the drug name in quotation marks (inverted commas) and the “numero” with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases *Da* (*Detur*) and *Signa* (*Signetur*):

<i>Recīpe: Spongias “Methuracōlum”</i>	<i>Recīpe: Sponges of meturacol</i>
<i>numĕro 10</i>	<i>number 10</i>
<i>Da</i>	<i>Give</i>
<i>Signa:</i>	<i>Write on the label:</i>

2. *Recipe* is followed by the Accusative plural forms *Spongias* and an adjective, the preposition “with”, the drug name and the form “numero” with a figure. After that the standard forms *Da* (*Detur*) and *Signa* (*Signetur*) follow:

*Recīpe: Spongias antisepticas cum Kanamycino numero 5*  
*Detur. Signetur:*  
*Take: Antiseptic sponges with kanamycin number 5*  
*Let it be given*  
*Let it be labelled:*

### § 93. THE PRESCRIPTION OF SUPPOSITORIES IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

A pharmaceutical suppository is a drug in the form of a round or conical tablet which is solid at room temperature and semisolid at body temperature. They distinguish the rectal suppository and the vaginal one. In the Accusative case, suppositories are prescribed as medical sponges:

1. *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative plural form *Suppositoria* with the adjective *vaginalia* (*rectalia*) or without these adjectives, the drug name in inverted commas and the *numero* with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases *Da* (*Detur*) and *Signa* (*Signetur*):

*Recīpe: Suppositoria vaginalia “Osarbonum” numĕro 10*  
*Da. Signa:*  
*Take: Vaginal suppositories of osarbon number 10*  
*Give. Write on the label:*

2. *Recipe* is followed by the Accusative plural form *Suppositoria*, the preposition “cum” and the active pharmaceutical component in the Ablative, a figure indicating the amount of this component, the form “numero” with a figure. After that the standard forms *Da* (*Detur*) and *Signa* (*Signetur*) follow in the next lines:

*Recīpe: Suppositoria cum Diprophyllīno 0,5 numĕro 30*  
*Detur. Signetur:*  
*Take: Suppositories with diprophylline 0,5 number 30*  
*Let it be given. Let it be labelled:*

## § 94. THE PRESCRIPTION OF AEROSOLS IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

An aerosol contains the drug in a gaseous form which is contained in a small cylinder provided with a valve.

Aerosols are prescribed in the Accusative singular form in two ways:

1. Recipe is followed by the Accusative singular form Aërosolum, its name in inverted commas and the numero with a figure. After that the standard forms Da (Detur) and Signa (Signetur) follow in the next lines:

Reciġe: Aërosolum “Proposōlum” numero 2 Da Signa:	Take: Aerosol of proposol number 2 Give. Write on the label:
--	---

2. Recipe is followed by the Accusative singular form Aërosolum and its name in inverted commas or quotation marks. In the second line, the standard phrase Da (Dentur) tales doses numero is written:

Reciġe: Aërosolum “Proposōlum” Da tales doses numero 2 Signa:	Take: Aerosol of proposol Give such a dose in the amount 2 Write on the label:
---	---

## § 95. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aesthes-, -aesth- -asthes- -esthes-	correction of sensibility	Anaesthesīnum, i n Aesthocīnum, i n Bellasthesīnum, i n Pavesthesīnum, i n	anaesthesin aesthocin bellasthesin pavesthesin
-cain-	anesthetic effect	Novocāinum, i n Ultracāinum, i n	novocain ultracain
-camph-	influence on the central and peripheral nervous system	Bromcamphōra, ae f Camphōnium, i n	bromcamphora camphonium
-erythr-, -eryth-, -ery-	1) containing erythromycin 2) produced from erythrocytes	Erythromycīnum, i n Eryhaemum, i n Erycyclīnum, i n	erythromycīn eryhaem erycyclin
-haem-	haemostatic or haematopoiesis stimulating effect	haemostatīcus, a, um Haemostimulīnum, i n	haemostatic haemostimulin
-oestr-	female genital hormones	Oestradiōlum, i n Synoestrōlum, i n	oestradiol synoestrol
-test-	male genital hormones	Medrotestrōnum, i n Testosterōnum, i n	medrotestron testosteron
-thym-	immunity stimulators produced from thymus	Thymalīnum, i n Thymoptīnum, i n	thymalin thymoptin
-thyr	correction of thyroid function	Thyroidīnum, i n Rifathyroīnum, i n	thyroidin rifathyroin

## § 96. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Ampullae cum pulvĕre Rifathyroīni; Granŭla Erycyclīni in capsŭlis; Injēctiōnes Thymalīni pro adultis; Lamellae ophthalmīcae cum Dicaīno; Pulvis Dicaīni crystallisātus; Solutio Pyromecaīni pro infusionibus intravenōsis; Spongia haemostatīca in vitro vitreo; Suppositoria “Anaesthesōlum”; Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

anaesthesin for narcosis; camphoric spirit for triturating; eryhaem in vitreous phials; haemostatic plaster of feracryl; oily solution of synoestrol in the ampoules; testoenat for injections; tablets of pregoestrol; solution of thymogen for intranasal introduction

3. Give the dictionary form of the nouns and the adjectives, translate the medical prescriptions into Latin:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Take: Coated tablets of allochol<br>for children number 25<br>Give. Write on the label:                                   | 2. Take: Capsules of oestradiol 0,14<br>number 12<br>Give. Write on the label:  |
| 3. Take: Thyreoidin 0,05<br>Let it be given of such a dose<br>number 50 in tablets<br>Let it be labelled:                    | 4. Take: Solution of haemophobin 5 ml<br>Give such a dose in<br>the amount 10 in ampoules<br>Write on the label:  |
| 5. Take: Erynit 0,1<br>Give such a dose in<br>the amount 20 in tablets<br>Write on the label:                                | 6. Take: Ophthalmic films with<br>neomycin number 8<br>Let it be given<br>Let it be labelled:   |
| 7. Take: Vaginal suppositories with<br>synthomycin 0,15 number 10<br>Give. Write on the label:                               | 8. Take: Aerosol of camphomen<br>Give such a dose<br>in the amount 2<br>Write on the label:   |
| 9. Take: Haemostatic collagen sponge<br>Let it be given of such a dose<br>number 4 in plastic packets<br>Let it be labelled: | 10. Take: Anaesthesin 2,5<br>Cocoa oil in sufficient<br>amount to make a rectal<br>suppository<br>Let it be given of such a<br>dose number 50 in tablets<br>Let it be labelled: |



## § 97. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 16

### Latin-English vocabulary

adultus, a, um — adult  
ampulla, ae f — ampoule  
“Anaesthesōlum” (Anaesthesōlum, i n) — anaesthesol  
capsūla, ae f — capsule  
crystallisātus, a, um — crystal  
Dicaīnum, i n — dicain  
Erycyclīnum, i n — erycyclin  
granūlum, i n — granule  
haemostatīcus, a, um — haemostatic  
infusio, ōnis f — infusion  
intravenōsus, a, um — intravenous  
lamella, ae f — film (ophthalmic)  
Oestradiōlum, i n — oestradiol  
ophthalmicus, a, um — ophthalmic  
Pyromecaīnum, i n — pyromecain  
pulvis, ěris m — powder  
Rifathyroīnum, i n — rifathyroin  
spongia, ae f — sponge  
Thymalīnum, i n — thymalin  
Thyreoidīnum, i n — thyreoidin  
vitrum, i n — phial, glass  
vitreus, a, um — vitreous

### English-Latin vocabulary

aerosol — aērosōlum, i n  
ampoule — ampulla, ae f  
anaesthesin — Anaesthesinum, i n  
camphomen — “Camphomēnum” (Camphomēnum, i n)  
camphoric — camphorātus, a, um  
collagen — collagenīcus, a, um  
eryhaem — Eryhaemum, i n  
erynit — Erynitum, i n  
erythromycin — Erythromycīnum, i n  
feracryl — “Feracrylum” (Feracrylum, i n)  
glass — 1) vitrum, i n; 2) vitreus, a, um  
haemophobin — Haemophobīnum, i n  
haemostatic — haemostatīcus, a, um  
in sufficient amount — quantum satis  
intranasal — intranasālis, e  
introduction — inductio, ōnis f

neomycin — Neomycīnum, i n  
 oily — oleōsus, a, um  
 packet — fascicūlus, i m  
 phial — vitrum, i n  
 plaster — emplastrum, i n  
 plastic — polyaethylenīcus, a, um  
 pregoestrol — Praegoestrōlum, i n  
 sponge — spongia, ae f  
 synthomycin — Synthomycīnum, i n  
 spirit (alcohol) — spirītus, us m  
 synoestrol — Synoestrōlum, i n  
 testoenat — Testoenātum, i n  
 trituration — trituration, ōnis f  
 thymogen — Thymogēnum, i n  
 vaginal — vaginālis, e

## Lesson 17

### Latin names of chemical elements, acids, oxides, hydroxides, peroxides

#### § 98. LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS

Latin names of chemical elements are, as a rule, nouns of the second declension and of the neuter gender beginning always with a capital letter:

Aluminium, i n — aluminium

Ferrum, i n — iron

Zincum, i n — zinc

Nouns of two chemical elements are exception from this rule:

Phosphōrus, i m — phosphorus

Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur (in American English the spelling is sulfur)

Some elements have double names:

fluorine — Fluōrum, i n = Phthorum, i n

magnesium — Magnium, i n = Magnesium, i n

See the chemical element names of most common usage in the table below:

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
Al	Aluminium	aluminium
Ag	Argentum	silver
As	Arsenīcum	arsenic
Au	Aurum	gold
Ba	Barium	barium
Bi	Bismūthum	bismuth
Br	Bromum	bromine
Ca	Calcium	calcium

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
C	Carboneum	carbon
Cl	Chlorum	chlorine
Cu	Cuprum	copper
Fe	Ferrum	iron
F	Fluōrum seu Phthorum	fluorine
Hg	Hydrargyrum	mercury
H	Hydrogenium	hydrogen
I	Iōdum	iodine
K	Kalium	potassium
Li	Lithium	lithium
Mg	Magnium seu Magnesium	magnesium
Mn	Mangānum	manganese
Na	Natrium	sodium
N	Nitrogenium	nitrogen
O	Oxygenium	oxygen
Pb	Plumbum	lead
P	Phosphōrus	phosphorus
Si	Silicium	silicon
S	Sulfur	sulphur (sulfur)
Zn	Zincum	zinc

### § 99. LATIN NAMES OF ACIDS

Every Latin acid name consists of the noun *acīdum* (acid) and an adjective of the first group with the ending **-um** in accordance with the rules of grammar agreement. One should, hereby, pay attention, that in the dictionary form, both nouns and adjective are written with a small letter but in the combination with adjectives the noun *acīdum* is written with a capital letter:

*acīdum, i n* — acid

*borīcus, a, um* — boric

**but:** *Acīdum borīcum*

There are three variants of Latin acid names. The first two variants cover the names of acids which include oxygen, the last one — the names of acids without oxygen.

In the first variant, when an acid contains the greatest amount of oxygen, the suffix **-ic-** and the ending **-um** are added to the stem of a chemical element. English equivalents of these Latin adjectives have the suffix **-ic** as a final element:

Latin noun of chemical element	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurīcus, a, um	Acīdum sulfurīcum (H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> )	sulphuric acid

The same way of acid names building is used when names of organic acids are formed:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
lac, lactis n (milk)	lact-	lacticus, a, um	Acidum lacticum	lactic acid

In the second variant when the acid of the same element contains lesser amount of oxygen, the suffix **-os-** is used. In this case English equivalents have the ending **-ous**:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurōsus, a, um	Acidum sulfurōsum (H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>3</sub> )	sulphurous acid

In the third variant, when an acid doesn't contain oxygen, the prefix **hydro-** and the suffix **-ic-** are added to the stem:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	hydrosulfuricus, a, um	Acidum sulfurōsum (H <sub>2</sub> S)	hydrosulphuric acid

One should remember that in acid names (as well as in salt names) formed from the noun Nitrogenium only a part of the stem is used: **-nitr**:

Acidum nitricum — nitric acid      Acidum nitrōsum — nitrous acid

### § 100. LATIN NAMES OF OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES

Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides consist of two words. The first one is always the Genitive form of a chemical element, then the Nominative form oxŷdum (hydroxŷdum, peroxydum) follows:

Zinci oxŷdum — zinc oxide

Aluminii hydroxŷdum — aluminium hydroxide

Hydrogenii peroxydum — hydrogen peroxide

The names oxŷdum, hydroxŷdum, peroxydum are nouns of the neutral gender of the second declension:

oxŷdum, i n

hydroxŷdum, i n

peroxydum, i n

### § 101. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS REFLECTING CHEMICAL INFORMATION

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-(a)z-, -(a)zid-, -(a)zin-, -(a)zol-, -(a)zon-	presence of nitrogen in the heterocyclic compounds	Azaleptinum, i n Phthivazidum, i n Sulfapyridazinum, i n Norsulfazolium, i n Sibazonum, i n	azaleptin phthivazid sulfapyridazin norsulfazol sibazon
-benz-	presence of benzene ring	Benzohexonium, i n benzoicus, a, um	benzohexon benzoic
-cyan-	cyanic acid, its anions or a cyan group	Cyanocobalaminum, i n cyanidum, i n	cyanocobalamine cyanide
-hydr-, -hyd-	presence of hydrogen, water or a hydroxyl group	Hydrogenium, i n Formaldehydum, i n	hydrogen formaldehyde
-naphth-	products of petroleum	Naphthalanum, i n Naphthyzinum, i n	naphthalan naphthyzin
-oxy-	presence of oxygen and its compounds	Chinoxydinum, i n Oxylidinum, i n	chinoxidin oxylidin
-phtha(l)-	derivatives of phthalic acid	Phthalazolium, i n Phthazolium, i n	phthalazol phthazol
-phthor-	presence of fluorine compounds	Phthorocortum, i n Phthoracizinum, i n	phthoracizin phthorocort
-sulf-	presence of sulphur or its derivatives	Norsulfazolium, i n sulfas, atis m	norsulphazol sulphate
-thi-	presence of sulphur atom in the names of thiosalts and thioacids	Thiopentalum, i n thiosulfas, atis m	thiopental thiosulphate
-yl-	presence of carbohydrogenic radicals	Benzylpenicillinum, i n salicylicus, a, um	benzylpenicillin salicylic

## § 102. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

Acidum arsenicosum anhydricum; Acidum ascorbinicum in dragées; Cyanocobalaminum seu Vitamimum B<sub>12</sub>; Emplastrum Plumbi simplex; Emulsum Erythrophosphatidi in ampullis; Phthalazolium in tabulettis; Pulvis Magnesii oxydi; Sirupus Aloes cum Ferro; Sulfacylum solubile pro injectionibus; Suspendio Hydrocortisoni in flaconibus; Tabulettae Acidi folici; Tabulettae Acidi acetylsalicylici enterosolubiles

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

ascorbic acid in drops; coated tablets of glutaminic acid; clear hydrochloric acid; diluted solution of hydrogen hydroxide; emulsion of castor oil; granules of furazolidon for children; powder of foxglove leaves; solution of nicotinic acid; solution of soluthizon for intratracheal injection; spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; suspension of aluminium hydroxide; tablets of lipoic acid; thioacetazon in tablets; white powder of sulphadimidine; yellow mercury oxide

3. Give the dictionary form both of the nouns and the adjectives, translate the medical prescriptions:

1. Take: Tablets of phthalazol 0,05  
number 20  
Give. Write on the label:
2. Take: Naphthalan ointment 50,0  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:
3. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0  
Distilled water up to 100 ml  
Let it be mixed  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:
4. Take: Purified sulphur  
Peach oil of each 30,0  
Let it be mixed  
Let it be sterilized!  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:
5. Take: Streptocide  
Sulphadimezin  
Norsulphazol of each 5,0  
Mix to make the finest  
powder  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:
6. Take: Glutaminic acid 1,5  
Solution of glucose 25 % —  
450 ml  
Mix  
Give  
Write on the label:
7. Take: Menthol 0,1  
Zinc oxide  
Boric acid of each 0,5  
Vaseline 10,0  
Mix to make an ointment  
Give  
Write on the label:
8. Take: Boric acid 5,0  
Zinc oxide  
Wheat starch of each 25,0  
Ointment of naphthalan 45,0  
Mix to make a paste  
Give.  
Write on the label:
9. Take: Ascorbic acid 0,2  
Nicotinic acid  
Riboflavin of each 0,25  
Distilled water up to 100 ml  
Let it be mixed  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:
10. Take: Yellow hydrogen oxide 0,6  
Ichthyol 0,8  
Zinc ointment 20,0  
Mix to make a paste  
Give  
Write on the label:
11. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,015  
Powder of rhubarb root  
Magnesium oxide of each  
0,3  
Mix to make a powder  
Give such a dose in the  
amount 10  
Write on the label:
12. Take: Salicylic acid  
Lactic acid of each 6,0  
Icy acetic acid 3,0  
Collodium up to 20,0  
Mix  
Give  
Write on the label:

## § 103. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 17

### Latin-English vocabulary

acetylsalicylicus, a, um — acetylsalicylic  
acīdum, i n — acid  
Aloë, ës f — aloe  
anhydrīcus, a, um — anhydrous  
arsenicōsus, a, um — arsenous  
ascorbinīcus, a, um — ascorbic  
Cyanocobalamīnum, i n — cyanocobalamin  
depurātus, a, um — purified  
dragées — drops  
emplastrum, i n — plaster  
emulsum, i n — emulsion  
enterosolubīlis, e — enteric soluble  
Erythrophosphatīdum, i n — erythrophosphatide  
Ferrum, i n — iron  
flaco, ōnis m — phial  
folīcus, a, um — folic  
Hydrocortisōnum, i n — hydrocortisone  
Magnesium, i n — magnesium  
Naphthalānum, i n — naphthalan  
Norsulfazōlum, i n — norsulphazol  
oxŷdum, i n — oxide  
Phthalazōlum, i n — phthalazol  
Plumbum, i n — lead  
Riboflavīnum, i n — riboflavin  
Ricīnus, i m — castor-oil plant  
seu — or  
simplex, ĩcis — simple  
solubīlis, e — soluble  
Streptocīdum, i n — streptocide  
Sulfacylum, i n — sulfacyl  
Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur  
suspensio, ōnis f — suspension  
vitamīnum, i n — vitamīn

### English-Latin vocabulary

acetic — acetīcus, a, um  
acid — acīdum, i n  
aluminium — Aluminium, i n  
ascorbic — ascorbinīcus, a, um

boric — borīcus, a, um  
castor oil — oleum Ricīni  
castor oil plant — Ricīnus, i m  
clear — purus, a, um  
coated — obductus, a, um  
collodium — Collodium, i n  
diluted — dilūtus, a, um  
distilled — destillātus, a, um  
drops — dragées  
emulsion — emulsum, i n  
finest — subtilissīmus, a, um  
foxglove — Digitālis, is f  
furazolidon — Furazolidōnum, i n  
glutaminic — glutaminīcus, a, um  
hydrochloric — hydrochlorīcus, a, um  
hydrogen — Hydrogenium, i n  
hydroxide — hydroxŷdum, i n  
icy — glaciālis, e  
ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n  
intratracheal — intratracheālis, e  
iodine — Iōdum, i n  
lactic — lactīcus, a, um  
lipoic — lipoīcus, a, um  
mercury — Hydrargŷrum, i n  
naphthalan — Naphthalānum, i n  
nicotinic — nicotinīcus, a, um  
oxide — oxŷdum, i n  
paste — pasta, ae f  
peach — Persīcum, i n  
phthalazol — Phthalazōlum, i n  
peach oil — Oleum Persicōrum  
rhubarb — Rheum, i n  
riboflavin — Riboflavīnum, i n  
root — radix, īcis f  
salicylic — salicylīcus, a, um  
soluthizon — Soluthizōnum, i n  
spirituous — spirituōsus, a, um  
starch — Amŷlum, i n  
sulphadimezin — Sulfadimezīnum, i n  
sulphadimidine — Sulfadimidīnum, i n  
thioacetazone — Thioacetazonum, i n  
vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n



up to — ad  
 water — aqua, ae f  
 wheat — Tritĭcum, i n  
 yellow — flavus, a, um

## Lesson 18

### Latin names of salts on the labels of drug names and in medical prescriptions

#### § 104. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS, WHOSE ANIONS CONTAIN OXYGEN

Latin names of salts consist of two parts. First goes the Genitive case of a cation (a chemical element name or, more seldom, a drug name), in the second place is the Nominative of an anion. Anion names are always written with a small letter. If we speak of anions derivatives of acids containing oxygen of different degrees, two variants of these anions are distinguished:

1. Names of anions containing the greatest amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-as** in the Nominative and **-ātis** in the Genitive singular: Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> — Natrii sulfas → sulfas, ātis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub>	Natrii sulfas	sulfas, ātis m	sulphate	sodium sulphate
NaNO <sub>3</sub>	Natrii nitras	nitras, ātis m	nitrate	sodium nitrate

So, one can very easily find out the correlation between English and Latin anion names of the first group: the English ending **-ate** corresponds to the Latin ending **-as**. In this way we may instantly determine Latin equivalents of English anions without analyzing their chemical composition, including all the anions of organic acids having the ending **-ate** too:

sodium salicylate — Natrii salicylas

testosterone propionate — Testosterōni propionas

2. The names of anions containing lesser amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-is** in the Nominative and **-ītis** in the Genitive singular: Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>3</sub> — Natrii sulfis → sulfis, ītis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>3</sub>	Natrii sulfis	sulfis, ītis m	sulphite	sodium sulphite
NaNO <sub>2</sub>	Natrii nitris	nitris, ītis m	nitrite	sodium nitrite

As you can see, the Latin anion ending **-is** corresponds to the English anion ending **-ite**, and it allows, as it is seen above, to determine any necessary equivalent taking as well into consideration the spelling of each separate word.

### § 105. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS WHOSE ANIONS DO NOT CONTAIN OXYGEN

The names of anions which don't contain oxygen are neutral nouns of the second declension with the suffix **-id-** and the ending **-um**:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na <sub>2</sub> S	Natrii sulfidum	sulfidum, i n	sulphide	sodium sulphide
NaCl	Natrii chloridum	chloridum, i n	chloride	sodium chloride

So, the complex ending **-idum** of the Latin anions which don't contain oxygen corresponds to the English ending **-ide** in the anions with the similar chemical compound.

**Conclusion:** if you remember the endings of the three seen above variants of Latin anions and if you know which Latin anion ending corresponds to the English one, you do not need to know the chemical compound of any salt to express correctly both English and Latin salt name.

### § 106. ANION NAMES OF BASIC SALTS

Latin anion names of basic salts are formed by adding the prefix **sub-**:

Bismūthi subnītras — basic nitrate of bismuth

Aluminii subacētas — basic acetate of aluminium

### § 107. TWO-COMPONENT NAMES OF POTASSIUM AND SODIUM SALTS

Two-component Latin names of potassium and sodium salts are written with a hyphen. Each component of such a name is a neutral noun of the second declension. The second component following the hyphen is written with a small letter. In the dictionary form, after the two-component Nominative cases the ending **-i** and the gender sign **n** follow. English equivalents of these terms are written without a hyphen:

Sulfacylum-natrium, i n — sulphacyl sodium

Benzylopenicillīnum- kalium, i n — benzylpenicillin potassium

### § 108. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS REFLECTING PHARMACEUTICAL INFORMATION

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aeth-	presence of ethyl group	aethylīcus, a, um Aethynālum, i n	ethylic etynal

<b>Morphological roots</b>	<b>Meaning</b>	<b>Latin examples</b>	<b>English equivalents</b>
-lysin-, -lytin-	removing some destructive factor	Phytolysīnum, i n Broncholytīnum, i n	phytolysin broncholytin
-meth-	presence of methyl group	Methylēnum, i n Methylium, i n	methylen methyl
-morph-	analgetics, derivatives of morphine	Apomorphīnum, i n Morpholongum, i n	apomorphin morpholong
-phen-	presence of phenyl group	Phenōlum, i n Phthorophenazīnum, in	phenol phthorophenazin
-phthi-	antitubercular effect	Phthivazīdum, i n Phthizopyrāmum, i n	ftivazide phthizopyram
-poly-	large number, multitude	polyvitaminōsus, a, um Polyamīnum, i n	multivitaminous polyamin
-thromb-	thrombolytics, against thrombosis	Thrombīnum, i n Thrombocytīnim, i n	thrombin thrombocytin

### § 109. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Aether stabilisātus pro narcosi; Barii sulfas pro rentgeno; Cerebrolysīnum in ampullis ad usum parenterālem; Emulsum Benzylī benzoātis medicinālis; Granūla Aethazōli-natrii pro infantībus; Membranūlae ophthalmīcae cum Atropīni sulfāte; Methylēnum coeruleum in capsūlis; Phenylī salicylas in tabulettis; Pulvis Phenoxymethylpenicillīni pro suspensiōne; Solutio Aethacidīni lactātis spirituōsa; Species polyvitaminōsae et pectorāles; Tabulettae Calcii orotātis; Theobrominum-natrium cum Natrii salicylāte; Spirītus aethylīcus rectificātus; Vitamīnum B<sub>6</sub> seu Pyridoxini hydrochlorīdum

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

basic acetate of lead; basic nitrate of bismuth with belladonna extract; coated tablets of tetracycline hydrochloride; hypertonic solution of sodium chloride; isotonic solution of sodium chloride; morpholong for intramuscular injections; ointment of copper citrate; ophthalmic films with fibrinolysin; polyethylenoxide for intravenous use; powder of sarcolysin for solution; precipitated calcium carbonate; rectified ethylic spirit; solution of terrilytin for inhalation; suppositories of methyluracil; syrup of broncholytin in phials; tablets of ethylmorphine hydrochloride for adults; tablets of phthivazid

3. Give the dictionary form of both nouns and adjectives; translate the medical prescriptions:

1. Take: Tincture of spring pheasant's eye herb 180 m  
Amidopyrin 2,0

2. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,001  
Basic bismuth nitrate  
Phenyl salicylate of each 0,25

Sodium bromide 4,0  
Codeine phosphate 0,2  
Mix  
Give  
Write on the label:

Mix to make a powder  
Give such a dose in  
the amount 10  
Write on the label:

3. Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride  
0,1  
Vaseline 10,0  
Mix to make an ointment  
Give  
Write on the label:

4. Take: Rectified ethyl spirit 95 % —  
20 ml  
Water for injections 100 ml  
Let it be mixed  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

5. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate  
0,005  
Phenobarbital  
Papaverin hydrochloride of  
each 0,02  
Give such a dose in the  
amount 10  
Write on the label:

6. Take: Dimedrol 0,01  
Ephedrin hydrochloride 0,1  
Peach oil 10 ml  
Mint oil I drop  
Mix  
Give  
Write on the label:

7. Take: Coated tablets of  
oleandoandomycin  
phosphate 0,125 number 25  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

8. Take: Ophthalmic films with  
neomycin sulphate number 10  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

9. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0,015  
Apomorphine hydrochloride  
0,05  
Diluted hydrochloric acid  
1 ml  
Distilled water up to 2000 ml  
Let it be mixed  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

10. Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0  
Potassium carbonate 5,0  
Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0  
Glycerin in sufficient amount  
Mix to make a paste  
Give  
Write on the label:

11. Take: Menthol  
Ethylmorphine hydrochloride  
of each 200 ml  
Sugar 0,03  
Mix to make a powder

12. Take: Tincture of althea root  
180 ml  
Sodium hydrocarbonate  
Sodium benzoate of each 5,0  
Simple syrup 20,0

Give such a dose in amount  
10  
Write on the label:

Mix  
Give  
Write on the label:

## § 110. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 18

### Latin-English vocabulary

Aethacridīnum, i n — ethacridine  
aethylīcus, a, um — ethyl  
aether, ěris m — ether  
Aethazōlum-natrium, i n — ethazol sodium  
Althaea, ae f — althea  
Apomorphinum, i n — apomorphine  
Atropīnum, i n — atropin  
benzoas, ātis m — benzoate  
Benzylum, i n — benzyl  
Calcium, i n — calcium  
Cerebrolysīnum, i n — cerebrolysin  
coeruleus, a, um — blue  
hydrochlorīdum, i n — hydrochloride  
lactas, ātis m — lactate  
medicinālis, e — medical  
Methylēnum, i n — methylen  
orōtas, ātis m — orotate  
parenterālis, e — parenteral  
pectorālis, e — pectoral  
Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n — phenoxymethylpenicillin  
Phenylīnum, i n — phenyl  
polyvitaminōsus, a, um — polyvitaminous  
Pyridoxīnum, i n — pyridoxine  
rentgēnum, i n — roentgenoscopy  
salicylas, ātis m — salicylate  
sulfas, ātis m — sulphate  
Natrium, i n — sodium  
spirituōsus, a, um — spirituous  
spirītus, us m — spirit  
suspensio, ōnis f — suspension  
Theobrominum-natrium, i n — theobromine sodium  
vernālis, e — existing in spring  
vitamīnum, i n — vitamin

### English-Latin vocabulary

amidopyrin — Amidopyrīnum, i n  
apomorphine — Apomorphīnum, i n

basic acetate — subacētas, ātis m  
basic nitrate — subnītras, ātis m  
belladonna — Belladonna, ae f  
benzoate — benzoas, ātis m  
bismuth — Bismūthum, i n  
bromide — bromīdum, i n  
broncholytin — Broncholytīnum, i n  
calcium — Calcium, i n  
carbonate — carbōnas, ātis m  
chloride — chlorīdum, i n  
citrate — citras, ātis m  
codeine — Codeīnum, i n  
copper — Cuprum, i n  
diluted — dilūtus, a, um  
dimedrol — Dimedrōlum, i n  
fibrinolysin — Fibrolysīnum, i n  
film — lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f  
glycerin — Glycerīnum, i n  
hydrocarbonate — hydrocarbōnas, atis m  
hydrochloride — hydrochlorīdum, i n  
hypertonic — hypertonīcus, a, um  
inhalation — inhalatio, ōnis f  
intramuscular — intramusculāris, e  
intravenous — intravenōsus, a, um  
isotonic — isotonīcus, a, um  
lead — Plumbum, i n  
magnesium — Magnesium, i n  
menthol — Menthōlum, i n  
morphine — Morphīnum, i n  
neomycin — Neomycīnum, i n  
papaverine — Papaverīnum, i n  
peach — Persīcum, i n  
peach oil — Oleum Persicōrum  
phenobarbital — Phenobarbitālum, i n  
phenyl — Phenylium, i n  
phosphate — phosphas, ātis m  
phthivazid — Phthivazīdum, i n  
platyphylline — Platyphyllīnum, i n  
polyethylenoxide — Polyæthylenoxīdum, i n  
potassium — Kalium, i n  
precipitated — praecipitātus, a, um  
salicylate — salicylas, ātis m

sarcolysin — Sarcolysīnum, i n  
 sodium — Natrium, i n  
 spring Adonis (=spring pheasant's eye) — Adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (is, e)  
 spirit — spirītus, us m  
 sugar — Sacchārum, i n  
 syrup — sirūpus, i m  
 terrilytin — Terrilytīnum, i n  
 vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n

**§ 111. MODEL (SAMPLE) OF THE FINAL TEST  
 IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY**

1. *Write down the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents:*

1) mercury; 2) basic acetate; 3) mint; 4) oxide; 5) rhubarb; 6) sugar;  
 7) sunflower; 8) glucose; 9) peach; 10) chloroform

2. *Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:*

1) decoction of oak bark; 2) powder of foxglove leaves; 3) dry extract of licorice; 4) camphoric spirit for trituration; 5) eryhaem in glass phials; 6) coated tablets of glutaminic acid; 7) emulsion of castor oil; 8) precipitated calcium carbonate

3. *Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives and translate the following prescriptions into Latin:*

1. Take: Ichthyol 3,0  
 Vaseline up to 30,0  
 Mix to make an ointment  
 Give  
 Write on the label:

2. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0  
 Distilled water up to 100 ml  
 Let it be mixed  
 Let it be given  
 Let it be labelled:

3. Take: Ophthalmic films with  
 neomycin number 8  
 Let it be given  
 Let it be labelled:

4. Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml  
 Sodium hydrocarbonate  
 Sodium benzoate of each 5,0  
 Simple sirup 20,0  
 Mix. Give.  
 Write on the label:

## Latin-english vocabulary

### A

**acetylsalicylicus, a, um**

acetylsalicylic

**acīdum, i n acid**

**ad (Acc.) for**

**ad usum externum** to be taken  
externally (= for external use)

**ad usum internum** to be taken  
internally (= for internal use)

**ad usum parenterālem** to be taken  
parenterally (=for parenteral use)

**adultus, a, um adult**

**Aethacridīnum, i n ethacridine**

**Aethazōlum-natrium, i n ethazol**  
sodium

**aether, ěris m ether**

**aethylicus, a, um ethylic**

**Aloë, ěs f aloe**

**Althaea, ae f althea**

**ampulla, ae f ampoule**

**Anaesthesōlum, i n anaesthesol**

**anhydrīcus, a, um anhydrous**

**Apomorphīnum, i n apomorphine**

**arsenicōsus, a, um arsenous**

**ascorbinīcus, a, um ascorbic**

**Aspirīnum, i n aspirin**

**Atropīnum, i n atropine**

### B

**Barium, i n barium**

**benzoas, ātis m benzoate**

**Benzylium, i n benzyl**

### C

**Calcium, i n calcium**

**capsūla, ae f capsule**

**Cerebrolysīnum, i n cerebrolysin**

**coeruleus, a, um blue**

**Corglycōnum, i n corglycon**

**crystallisātus, a, um crystal**  
**cum (Abl.) with**

**Cyanocobalamīnum, i n**  
cyanocobalamin

### D

**depurātus, a, um purified**

**Dibiomycīnum, i n dibiomycine**

**Dicaīnum, i n dicain**

**dragées drops**

### E

**emplastrum, i n plaster**

**emulsum, i n emulsion**

**enterosolubīlis, e enteric soluble**

**Erycyclīnum, i n erycycline**

**Erythrophosphatīdum, i n**  
erythrophosphatide

**et and**

**Eucalyptus, i f eucalypt**

**Euphyllīnum, i n euphylline**

**ex (Abl.) from, of**

**extractum, i n extract**

### F

**Ferrum, i n iron**

**flaco, ōnis m phial**

**fluidus, a, um liquid**

**folīcus, a, um folic**

**folium, i n leaf**

**fructus, us m fruit**

### G

**Glucōsum, i n glucose**

**Glycyramum, i n glycyram**

**granūlum, i n granule**

### H



**haemostaticus, a, um** haemostatic  
**Helianthus, i m** sunflower  
**hydrochloridum, i n** hydrochloride  
**Hydrocortisonum, i n**  
hydrocortisone

## I

**In (Abl.) in**  
**infans, ntis m, f** child  
**infusio, ōnis f** infusion  
**injectio, ōnis f** injection  
**intravenosus, a, um** intravenous

## L

**lactas, ātis m** lactate  
**lamella, ae f** film (ophthalmic)  
**Leonurus, i m** motherwort  
**linimentum, i n** liniment

## M

**Magnesium, i n** magnesium  
**medicinālis, e** medical  
**membranula, ae f** film  
**Methylenum, i n** methylene

## N

**Naphthalenum, i n** naphthalan  
**narcosis, is f** narcosis  
**Natrium, i n** sodium  
**Norsulfazolium, i n** norsulphazol

## O

**obductus, a, um** coated  
**Oestradiolum, i n** oestradiol  
**oleum, i n** oil  
**ophthalmicus, a, um** ophthalmic  
**orotas, ātis m** orotate  
**oxydum, i n** oxide

## P

**parenterālis, e** parenteral

**pectorālis, e** pectoral  
**Phenoxymethylpenicillinum, i n**  
phenoxymethylpenicillin  
**Phenylum, i n** phenyl  
**Phthalazolium, i n** phthalazol  
**Phytinum, i n** phytin  
**Phytomenadiolum, i n**  
phytomenadion  
**Plumbum, i n** lead  
**polyvitaminosus, a, um**  
polyvitaminous  
**pro (Abl.) for**  
**pulvis, ěris m** powder  
**Pyridoxinum, i n** pyridoxine  
**Pyromecainum, i n** pyromecain

## Q

**quantum satis** in sufficient amount  
**Quercus, us f** oak

## R

**radix, ĩcis f** root  
**rectificatus, a, um** rectified  
**rentgenum, i n** roentgenoscopy  
**rhizoma, ātis n** rhizome  
**Riboflavinum, i n** riboflavin  
**Ricinus, i m** castor oil plant  
**Rifathyroinum, i n** rifathyroin  
**Rosa, ae f** dog rose, wild rose

## S

**salicylas, ātis m** salicylate  
**seu or**  
**simplex, ĩcis** simple  
**sirupus, i m** syrup  
**solubilis, e** soluble  
**solutio, ōnis f** solution  
**species, ěrum f** species  
**spirituosus, a, um** spirituous  
**spiritus, us m** spirit  
**spongia, ae f** sponge  
**stabilisatus, a, um** stabilized

**Streptocīdum, i n** streptocide  
**Sulfacylum, i n** sulfacyl  
**sulfas, ātis m** sulphate  
**Sulfur, ūris n** sulphur  
**suppositorium, i n** suppository  
**suspensio, ōnis f** suspension  
**Synthomycīnum, i n** synthomycine

## **T**

**tabuleta, ae f** tablet  
**Testosterōnum, i n** testosterone  
**Theobrominum-natrium, i n**  
theobromine sodium  
**Theophedrīnum, i n** theophedrin  
**Theophyllīnum, i n** theophylline  
**Thymalīnum, i n** thymalin

**Thyreoidīnum, i n** thyreoidin  
**tinctūra, ae f** tincture

## **U**

**unguentum, i n** ointment  
**usus, us m** use

## **V**

**vaginālis, e** vaginal  
**Valeriāna, ae f** valerian  
**vernālis, e** existing in spring  
**vitamīnum, i n** vitamin  
**vitreus, a, um** vitreous  
**vitrum, i n** phial, glass

## English-latin vocabulary

### A

**acetic** acetīcus, a um  
**acid** acīdum, i n  
**Adonis** Adōnis, ĩdis m, f  
**Adonis vernalis**(=sping pheasant's eye) Adōnis (ĩdis m, f)  
vernālis (is, e)  
**adult** adultus, i m; adultus, a, um  
**aerosol** aērosōlum, i n  
**alcohol** Allochōlum, i n  
**althea** Althaea, ae f  
**aluminium** Aluminium, i n  
**amidopyrin** Amidopyrīnum, i n  
**ampoule** ampulla, ae f  
**anaesthesin** Anaesthesinum, i n  
**antiasthmatic** antiasthmaīcus, a, um  
**antipyrin** Antipyrīnum, i n  
**apomorphine** Apomorphīnum, i n  
**ascorbic** ascorbinīcus, a, um

### B

**bark** cortex, ĩcis m  
**basic acetate** subacētas, ātis m  
**basic nitrate** subnītras, ātis m  
**belladonna** Belladonna, ae f  
**benzoate** benzoas, ātis m  
**bismuth** Bismūthum, i n  
**boric** borīcus, a, um  
**bromide** bromīdum, i n  
**broncholytin** Broncholytīnum, i n

### C

**calcium** Calcium, i n  
**camphomen** "Camphomēnum"  
(Camphomēnum, i n)  
**camphoric** camphorātus, a, um  
**capsule** capsūla, ae f  
**carbonate** carbōnas, ātis m  
**castor oil** oleum Ricīni

**children** infantes, ium m, f  
**chloride** chlorīdum, i n  
**chloroform** Chloroformium, i n  
**citrate** citras, ātis m  
**clear** purus, a, um  
**coated** obductus, a, um  
**cocoa** Cacāo (without a dictionary form)  
**codeine** Codeīnum, i n  
**collagen** collagenīcus, a, um  
**collodium** Collodium, i n  
**compound** composītus, a, um  
**copper** Cuprum, i n

### D

**decoction** decoctum, i n  
**diluted** dilūtus, a, um  
**dimedrol** Dimedrōlum, i n  
**distilled** destillātus, a, um  
**drops** dragées  
**dry** siccus, a, um

### E

**emulsion** emulsum, i n  
**ephatin** Ephaīnum, i n  
**eryhaem** Eryhaemum, i n  
**erynit** Erynītum, i n  
**erythromycin** Erythromycinum, i n  
**ether** aether, ěris m  
**eucalyptus** Eucalyptus, i f  
**extract** extractum, i n

### F

**feracryl** "Feracrylum"  
(Feracrylum, i n)  
**fibrinolysin** Fibrolysīnum, i n  
**film** lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f  
**finest** subtilissīmus, a, um  
**flax** Linum, i n

**flower** flos, floris m  
**for** pro (Abl.); ad (Acc.) + usum  
**foxtglove** Digitalis, is f  
**furazolidone** Furazolidōnum, i n

## G

**glass** 1) vitrum, i n; 2) vitreus, a, um  
**glucose** Glucōsum, i n  
**glutaminic** glutaminīcus, a, um  
**glyceric** glycerinōsus, a, um  
**glycerin** Glycerīnum, i n  
**glycin** Glycīnum, i n  
**granule** granūlum, i n

## H

**haemophobin** Haemophobīnum, i n  
**haemostatic** haemostatīcus, a, um  
**hawthorn** Crataegus, i f  
**herb** herba, ae f  
**hydrocarbonate** hydrocarbōnas,  
ātis m  
**hydrochloric** hydrochlorīcus, a, um  
**hydrochloride** hydrochlorīdum, i n  
**hydrogen** Hydrogenium, i n  
**hydrotartrate** hydrotartras, ātis m  
**hydroxide** hydroxĭdum, i n  
**hypertonic** hypertonīcus, a, um

## I

**ichthyol** Ichthyōlum, i n  
**icy** glaciālis, e  
**in** in ( in pharmaceutical terms with  
Ablative )  
**inhalation** inhalatio, ōnis f  
**injection** injectio, ōnis f  
**in sufficient amount** quantum satis  
**intramuscular** intramusculāris, e  
**intranasal** intranasālis, e  
**intratracheal** intratracheālis, e  
**intravenous** intravenōsus, a, um  
**introduction** inductio, ōnis f  
**iodine** Iōdum, i n

**isotonic** isotonīcus, a, um

## L

**lactic** lactīcus, a, um  
**lead** Plumbum, i n  
**leaf** folium, i n  
**licorice** Glycyrrhīza, ae f  
**lily of the valley** Convallaria, ae f  
**liniment** linimentum, i n  
**lipoic** lipoīcus, a, um  
**liquid** fluīdus, a, um

## M

**magnesium** Magnesium, i n  
**matricary** Chamomilla, ae f  
**medicinal** medicinālis, e  
**menthol** Menthōlum, i n  
**mercury** Hydrargĭrum, i n  
**methyluracil** Methyluracīlum, i n  
**mint** Mentha, ae f  
**morphine** Morphīnum, i n  
**morpholong** Morpholongum, i n  
**mycoseptin** Mycoseptīnum, i n

## N

**naphthalan** Naphthalānum, i n  
**narcosis** narcōsis, is f  
**neomycin** Neomycīnum, i n  
**nicotinic** nicotinīcus, a, um  
**norsulphazol** Norsulfazōlum, i n  
**nitroglycerin** Nitroglycerīnum, i n  
**number** numĕrus, i m

## O

**oak** Quercus, us f  
**oestradiol** Oestradiōlum, i n  
**oil** oleum, i n  
**oily** oleōsus, a, um  
**ointment** unguentum, i n  
**oleandomycin** Oleandomycīnum, i n  
**ophthalmic** ophthalmīcus, a, um  
**oxide** oxĭdum, i n

## P

**packet** fascicūlus, i m  
**papaverine** Papaverīnum, i n  
**paste** pasta, ae f  
**peach** Persīcum, i n  
**peach oil** Oleum Persicōrum  
**pectoral** pectorālis, e  
**pepper** piperītus, a, um  
**phenobarbital** Phenobarbitālum, i n  
**phenyl** Phenylium, i n  
**phial** vitrum, i n  
**phosphate** phosphas, ātis m  
**phthalazol** Phthalazōlum, i n  
**phthivazid** Phthivazīdum, i n  
**phytomenadion**  
Phytomenadiōnum, i n  
**plaster** emplastrum, i n  
**plastic** polyaethylenīcus, a, um  
**platyphylline** Platyphyllinīnum, i n  
**polyethylenoxid**  
Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n  
**potassium** Kalium, i n  
**powder** pulvis, ěris m  
**precipitated** praecipitātus, a, um  
**praegoestrol** Praegoestrolum, i n  
**purified (about solid substances)**  
purificātus, a, um

## R

**rectal** rectālis, e  
**rectified (about liquid substances)**  
rectificātus, a, um  
**rhizome** rhizōma, ātis n  
**rhubarb** Rheum, i n  
**riboflavin** Riboflavīnum, i n  
**root** radix, ĩcis f

## S

**salicylate** salicylas, ātis m  
**salicylic** salicylīcus, a, um

**sarcolysin** Sarcolysīnum, i n  
**seed** semen, ĩnis n  
**simple** simplex, ĩcis  
**sodium** Natrium, i n  
**soluble** solubīlis, e  
**soluthizone** Soluthizōnum, i n  
**solution** solutio, ōnis f  
**species** species, ěrum f (only plur.)  
**spirit (alcohol)** spirītus, us m  
**spirituous** spirituōsus, a, um  
**sponge** spongia, ae f  
**spring** vernālis, e  
**strophanthus** Strophanthus, i m  
**starch** Amylum, i n  
**streptocide** Streptocīdum, i n  
**strophanthine** Strophanthīnum, i n  
**strophanthus** Strophanthus, i m  
**sublingual** sublinguālis, e  
**such talis, e**  
**sugar** Sacchārum, i n  
**sulphadimezine** Sulfadimezīnum, i n  
**sulphadimidine** Sulfadimidīnum, i n  
**sulphate** sulfas, ātis m  
**sulphur** sulfur, ūris n  
**sunflower** Helianthus, i m  
**synoestrol** Synoestrōlum, i n  
**synthomycin** Synthomycīnum, i n  
**suppository** suppositorium, i n  
**suspension** suspensio, ōnis f  
**syrup** sirūpus, i m

## T

**tablet** tabuletta, ae f  
**tea** thea, ae f  
**terrilytine** Terrilytīnum, i n  
**tetracycline** Tetracyclīnum, i n  
**testoenat** Testoenātum, i n  
**theophylline** Theophyllīnum, i n  
**thioacetazone** Thioacetazōnum, i n  
**thymogen** Thymogēnum, i n  
**thyreoidin** Thyreoidīnum, i n  
**tincture** tinctūra, ae f

**trituration** trituration, ōnis f

**U**

**up to** ad

**use** usus, us m

**V**

**vaginal** vaginālis, e

**valerian** Valeriāna, ae f

**vaseline** Vaselīnum, i n

**vitreous** vitreus, a, um

**W**

**water** aqua, ae f

**wheat** Tritīcum, i n

**with** cum (Abl.)

**Y**

**yellow** flavus, a, um

**Z**

**zinc** Zincum, i n

РЕПОЗИТОРИЙ БГМУ

**PART IV**  
**CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY**

**Lesson 19**

**Introduction to latin clinical terminology.**

**One-word terms and their morphological structure.**

**Initial and final morphological elements used for word building.**

**Names of branches of medicine and medical specialists.**

**Names of medical examinations**

**§ 112. GENERAL REMARKS ON LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY**

Clinical names are the most numerous among all medical terms, as these names signify a huge amount of different diseases, pathological conditions and abnormalities, medical examinations and operations. This terminology also includes a great amount of paramedical vocabulary. It is estimated that about 50 % of English medical terms are of Greek origin, but this relation is particularly evident in clinical terms.

The word **clinical** itself is of Greek origin (klinike means bed) and it is the acknowledgement of the important role of Greek physicians in both theoretical and practical medicine. Thanks to Greek physicians many diseases got their names and via Latin became a part of European medical languages. New clinical names coming into use were built, as a rule, on the basis of Greek vocabulary and Greek morphological elements. The grammar form of new clinical terms corresponds to the norms of Latin or some European languages. This historical tradition, in particular, is followed in English. For example:

<b>Latin</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
adenitis	adenitis	inflammation of a gland
cardiopathia	cardiopathy	disease of the heart
osteoma	osteoma	tumour made up of bone tissue

It is indisputable that clinical terms composed on the basis of Greek morphological elements have a very important advantage: they are short, but may stand for a large clinical definition. That is why they are the priority choice of the physicians all over the world, and everyone who has a M. D. must know the rules of word building of medical terms and learn lexical and morphological word building elements.

**§ 113. THE MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE OF ONE-WORD CLINICAL TERMS**

From the point of view of their morphological structure, one-word clinical terms can be: 1) simple, containing only one stem; 2) compound, consisting of two or more morphological elements.

About 15 % clinical names belong to the first group, e. g. *asthma*, ātis n — *asthma*; *cancer*, cri m — *cancer*; *herpes*, ětis m — *herpes*; *ulcus*, ěris n — *ulcer*. These noun-terms are mostly used in combination with adjectives or nouns: *asthma bronchiāle* — *bronchial asthma*; *ulcus gastris* — *ulcer of the stomach*.

The majority of one-word clinical terms consist of two or more morphological elements. These elements can be expressed by:

I. Greek affixes (prefixes, suffixes) and roots of nouns or adjectives. In this case, the name can contain:

I.1. A prefix, a root, a suffix and an ending (mostly **-ia**, **-ēma**, **-ismus**, **-ītis**, **-ōma**, **-ōsis**):

**parametrītis**, ĭdis f — parametritis (tissue inflammation near uterus). The name includes: a) the prefix **para-** (near); b) the root **metr-** (uterus); c) the suffix **-ītis** (combination of suffix **-it-** and ending **-is**) with the constant meaning of “inflammation”;

I.2. A prefix, one or more roots and an ending:

**atrichia**, ae f — atrichia (lack of hair). The name includes: a) the prefix **a-** (absence, lack, cessation of a function) b) the root **trich-** (hair) c) the ending **-ia**;

**hypermetropia**, ae f — hypermetropia (long-sightedness). The name includes: a) the prefix **hyper-** (excessive function); b) the root **-metr-** (measurement); c) the final root **-opia** (sight);

I.3. A root and a suffix (suffixed ending): **chondrōma**, ātis n — chondroma (tumour of cartilaginous tissue). The name includes: a) the root **chondr-** (cartilage); b) the suffix **-ōma** with the meaning “tumour”(=tumor).

2. The initial and final word building roots in combination with the term endings **-ia**, **-ēma**, **-ismus**, **-ītis**, **-ōma**, **-ōsis**, **-us**. If the initial word building root hereby ends up with a consonant and the final one begins with a consonant too, these roots are joined via a connecting vowel **-o-**:

**rhinopathia**, ae f — rhinopathy (disease of the nose). The name includes: 1) the root **rhin-** (nose); 2) the connecting vowel **-o-**; 3) the root **path-** (disease);

**otorhinolaryngolōgus**, i m — otorhinolaryngologist (the doctor for treating ear, nose and larynx diseases). The name includes: a) the root **ot-** (ear); b) the root **rhin-** (nose); c) the root **laryng-** (larynx); d) the final root **-logus** (a medical specialist).

If the first root ends with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** is usually omitted:

**pelvimetria**, ae f — pelvimetry (pelvis measurement);

**tachycardia**, ae f — tachycardia (abnormally fast heart rate).

If the second root begins with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** as a rule is omitted too:

haemat + uria → **haematuria**, ae f — hematuria (blood in the urine);

odont + algia → **odontalgia**, ae f — odontalgia (toothache, feeling of pain in the tooth).



Though there are some exceptions from this rule: e. g. the roots **broncho-** and **bronchi-** never lose their final vowels: **bronchiectasia, ae f** (=bronchoectasia) — bronchiectasis (expansion of the bronchi); **bronchoadenitis, itīdis f** — bronchoadenitis (inflammation of lymphatic glands). The root **bi-** is always used with the connecting -o-: biocycle, biology, microbiology, biopharmaceutics.

#### § 114. SOME NOTES ON THE WORD STRESSING IN CLINICAL NAMES

In the compound nouns with the ending **-ia** the last but one vowel “**i**” is, as a rule, stressed contrary to the rule “vowel before vowel is short”: atrichía, bronchiectasía, haematuría, hypermetropía, odontalgía, rhinopathía. The noun **anatómia** (anatomy) and nouns with the final element **-logia** keep the third syllable from the end stressed: cardiología (cardiology), neurológia (neurology), fisiológia (physiology).

#### § 115. INITIAL AND FINAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Initial root elements are combined in a one-word term, as you could see above, with the final roots via the connecting vowel -o- or with the final suffixes. These roots are presented in the table of each lesson in the following consequence: 1) the Greek root; 2) its Latin equivalent in the dictionary form; 3) English meaning; 4) English clinical word element:

ger-, geront-	senex, is m	1) old man; 2) old age	ger-, geront-
---------------	-------------	------------------------	---------------

Initial roots can have two or more variants: ger-, geront- (old man or old age); haem-, haemat- (blood). All these variants are to be learnt by heart.

Final root elements are not as numerous as initial ones, but their word building capacity is very high. One should also remember that the final root or suffixed word building element comes first in the literal translation of the term, for example:

The term nephrographia, ae f consists of the initial root **nephr-** (kidney) and the final root **-graphia** (X-ray examination), so the literal translation is “X-ray examination of the kidneys”, nephrography.

The term myōma, ātis n consists of the initial root **my-** (muscle) and the final root **-oma** (tumour), so the literal translation is “tumour of muscular tissue”, myoma.

Final root elements can be part of an adjective too, e. g.: **-gēnus, a, um** in the **term** biogēnus, a, um — biogenic (caused by a living organism).

The final roots are presented at each lesson in the table like that:

-logus — a specialist in a brunch of science or medicine

-iāter — a doctor, specialist in a brunch of clinical medicine

Some roots may be both initial and final. Final roots have common endings, mostly the ending **-ia**. For example: the initial root **ophthalm-** and

the final root **-ophthlmia** have the same meaning “eye”. In these cases, both roots are placed in the same cell of the table.

### § 116. NAMES OF THE MAIN BRANCHES OF CLINICAL MEDICINE

Names of the main branches of clinical medicine are usually formed by means of the final root element **-logia** and the appropriate initial one, which determines the cardinal sense of the term. It should be mentioned that the most numerous names of medico-biological sciences are built according to this rule:

ophthalm- (eye) + logia → ophthalmologia, ae f — ophthalmology, a branch of clinical medicine treating eye diseases;

proct- (rectum) + logia → proctologia, ae f — proctology, a branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases. Compare as well:

immunologia, ae f — immunology, a science about immunity;

pharmacologia, ae f — pharmacology, a science about drugs and their usage;

physiologia, ae f — physiology, a science about normal vital processes in human organism.

Names of some branches of clinical medicine are built by adding the root **-patho-** (disease) and the final root **-logia** to the initial root:

neur- (nerve) + -patho- + logia → neuropathologia, ae f — neuropathology, clinical neurology, a branch of clinical medicine treating nerve diseases;

sex- (sex) + -patho- + logia → sexopathologia, ae f — sexopathology, a branch of medicine dealing with sexual disorders.

Some names of medical branches are formed by means of the final root element **-iatria**, which means some definite branches of clinical medicine:

geriatria, ae f — geriatrics, a particular branch of medicine treating diseases of older age;

paediatria, ae f — pediatrics, a branch of medicine treating children’s diseases;

phoniatria, ae f — phoniatics, a branch of medicine treating disorders of voice production;

phthisiatria, ae f — phthisiology, a branch of medicine treating tuberculosis;

psychiatria, ae f — psychiatrics (psychiatry), a branch of medicine treating mental diseases.

### § 117. NAMES OF MEDICAL SPECIALISTS

Most names of medical specialists are composed of the final root element **-logus** and the appropriate initial root element which determines the cardinal sense of the term. In this way the names of most biological and medical specialists are formed:

**anthropolōgus, i m** — anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution;

**biolōgus, i m** — biologist, a specialist studying forms of life and living organisms;

**diaetolōgus, i m** — dietitian, a specialist in the dietary nutrition;

**haematolōgus, i m** — hematologist, a specialist in blood diseases.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-pathologia**, then the name of a specialist has the ending **-patholōgus**:

neuropathologia → **neuropatholōgus, i m** — neuropathologist, a specialist in nerve diseases;

sexopathologia → **sexopatholōgus, i m** — sexopathologist, a specialist treating sexual disorders.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-iatria**, then the name of a specialist has the ending **-iāter**:

paediatricia → **paediāter, tri m** — pediatrician (=pediatrist), a specialist in children's diseases.

Finally, many Latin names of medical specialists are built by means of the suffix **-ista** and the initial root element:

**oculista, ae m** — oculist, a specialist treating eye diseases;

**therapeutista, ae m** — physician, therapist, a specialist treating inner organs.

#### § 118. SOME NOTES ON THE NAMES OF MEDICAL SPECIALISTS IN LATIN AND ENGLISH

Names of medical specialists in Latin don't fully coincide with the English equivalents, as seen above. The difference lies not only on the morphological level (phtisiāter, tri m — phtisiologist), — sometimes the lexical units don't correspond to each other. For example, the name otorhinolaryngologist is not quite common for English or American medical vocabulary; — instead three separate terms are used: otologist, rhinologist and laryngologist. But, the term otolaryngologist is used as well. That is why it is more convenient to use this slightly artificial, but formally correct term otorhinolaryngologist, than to bring three English terms as equivalents. And otherwise, we tend to use the terms presented both in modern English and Latin medical language.

#### § 119. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS AND METHODS OF TREATMENT

The names of medical examinations are usually formed by means of the final root elements **-graphia**, **-metria**, **-scopia**, **-diagnostica**:

**cystographia, ae f** — cystography, X-ray examination of the urinary bladder;

**pelvimetria, ae f** — pelvimetry, measuring of pelvis size in women;

**proctoscopia, ae f** — proctoscopy, internal examination of the rectum;

**thermodiagnostīca, ae f** — thermodiagnosics, a diagnosis via infrared radiation.

Names which signify methods of medical treatment usually contain the final root element **-therapia** and the initial root element indicating a method of treatment:

**physiotherapia, ae f** — physiatrics, treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors;

**phytotherapia, ae f** — phytotherapy, treatment by means of medicinal herbs.

Results of X-ray, electric or other methods of medical examination are expressed by the final root **-gramma**:

**haemogramma, ātis n** — hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood;

**mammogramma, ātis n** — mammogram, an X-ray film of breast.

#### § 120. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
anthrop-	homo, ĩnis m	man	anthrop-
bi-	vita, ae f	life	bi-
cardi-	cor, cordis n	heart	cardi-
ger-, geront-	senex, senis m	old man or old age	ger-, geront-
gynaec-	femīna, ae f	woman	gynaec-
haem-, haemat-	sanguis, ĩnis m	blood	hem-, hemat-
mast-, mamm-	mamma, ae f	breast	mast-, mamm-
neur-	nervus, i m	nerve	neur-
ophthalm-, -ophthalmia	ocūlus, i m	eye	ophthalm-, -ophthalmia
ot-	auris, is f	ear	ot-
paed-	infans, ntis m, f	child	ped-
path-	morbus, i m	disease	path-
pharmac-	medicamentum, i n	drug	pharmac-
phthisi-	tuberculosis, is f	tuberculosis	phthisi-
physi-	natūra, ae f	nature	physi-
phyt-	planta, ae f	plant, herb	phyt-
proct-	rectum, i n	rectum	proct-
psych-	anĭmus, i m	psyche	psych-
rhin-	nasus, i m	nose	rhin-
somat-	corpus, ōris n	body	somat-
stom-, stomat-	os, oris n	mouth	stom-, stomat-

## § 121. TABLE OF FINAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-diagnostīca	examination of functional state of organs in order to reveal some disorders
-gēnus, a, um	caused by any factor
-graphia	1) X-ray examination; 2) examination by means of electricity; 3) recording of the result of some examination
-gramma	result of some medical examination seen on a film or presented graphically
-iater	medical specialist treating certain inner diseases
-iatria	any definite branch of clinical medicine
-logia	name of some science or branch of clinical medicine
-logus	name of medical or biological specialists
-metria	measurement of physical characteristics of human body
-scopia	visual or instrumental visual examination
-therapia	method of treatment

**So, your task is to memorize the word building elements of this and the following lessons and combine these elements in terms. If you are not quite sure of your version of translation, consult the dictionary.**

## § 122. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

cardi-, neur-, ot-, paed-, path-, pharmac-, physi-, phyt-, proct-, psych-

2. Give the Greek morphological elements corresponding to the following Latin nouns:

anīmus, i m; auris, is f; corpus, ōris n; femīna, ae f; homo, īnis m; medicamentum, i n; morbus, i m; oculus, i m; sanguis, īnis m; senex, senis m; tuberculōsis, is f; vita, ae f

3. Determine orally the full dictionary form of each term and the meaning of the initial and final roots, write down the full definition:

anthropologia; anthropogēnus; biolōgia; cardiolōgus; cardiogēnus; craniometria; geriāter; gynaecolōgus; haematologia; iatrogēnus; mastogramma; neuropatholōgus; ophthalmoscopia; otorhinolaryngologia; physiologia; phthisiāter; phytotherapia; proctolōgus; psychiatria; rhinogramma; somatologia; stomatoscopia

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases; branch of medicine treating diseases of children; diagnosis via examination of iris; medical specialist treating blood diseases; medical specialist treating inner organs; measurement of pelvis in women; results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; science studying drugs and their usage; treatment by

means of natural or artificial physical factors; specialist studying forms of life and living organisms; specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; treatment by means of medical herbs; the X-ray examination of mamma

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition in English of the terms:

anthropologist; biopharmaceutics; cardiogram; cardiography; gerontology; hematology; hemogram; iatrogenic; iridodiagnostics; mammogram; neurogenic; ophthalmoscopy; otogenic; otolaryngologist; pediatrician; pharmacotherapy; phthisiologist; phytotherapy; proctodiagnostics; proctoscopy; psychiatrist; psychogenic; psychologist; rhinoscopy; somatology; stomatology; therapist; thoracometry

### § 123. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 19

#### Latin-English vocabulary

anthropologia, ae f — anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution

anthropolōgus, i m — anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution

biologia, ae f — biology, science studying forms of life and vital organisms

cardiolōgus, i m — cardiologist, medical specialist treating heart diseases

cardiogēnus, a, um — cardiogenic, happening because of the heart

craniometria, ae f — craniometry, measurement size of the skull

geriāter, tri m — geriatrician, medical specialist treating diseases of the aged

gynaecolōgus, i m — gynecologist, medical specialist treating genital diseases in women

haematologia, ae f — hematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases

iatrogēnus, a, um — iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks

mastogramma, ātis n — mastogram, result of breast X-ray examination

neuropatholōgus, i m — neuropathologist, specialist treating diseases of the nervous system

ophthalmoscopy, ae f — ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye

otorhinolaryngologia, ae f — otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx

physiologia, ae f — physiology, science studying normal vital processes in human body

phthysiāter, tri m — phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis

phytotherapia, ae f — phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal herbs

proctolōgus, i m — proctologist, specialist treating diseases of rectum

psychiatria, ae f — psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases  
rhinogramma, ātis n — rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose  
somatologia, ae f — somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of  
the human body  
stomatoscopia, ae f — stomatoscopy, visual examination of the oral cavity

### **English-Latin vocabulary**

anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution —  
anthropolōgus, i m  
biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal  
substances — biopharmaceutīca, ae f  
branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases — proctologia, ae f  
branch of medicine treating diseases of children — paediatría, ae f  
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical picture of  
heart action — cardiogramma, ātis n  
cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical recording of heart  
action — cardiographia, ae f  
diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics — iridodiagnostīca, ae f  
hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood —  
haemogramma, ātis n  
iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks  
— iatrogēnus, a, um  
iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via examination of iris — iridodiagnostīca, ae f  
measurement of pelvis in women, pelvimetry — pelvimetria, ae f  
medical specialist treating blood diseases, hematologist — haematolōgus, i m  
neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system disorders — neurogēnus,  
a, um  
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye — ophthalmosopia,  
ae f  
otogenic, happening because of the ear — otogēnus, a, um  
otolaryngologist, specialist treating ear and larynx diseases — otolaryngolōgus,  
i m  
pediatrician, specialist treating children's diseases — paediāter, tri m  
pharmacotherapy, the treatment of disease with drugs — pharmacotherapia,  
ae f  
phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs — phytotherapia,  
ae f  
proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum —  
proctodiagnostica, ae f  
proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum — proctosopia,  
ae f  
psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases — psychiāter, tri m

phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis — phthisiāter, tri m  
 results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram —  
 haemogramma, ātis n  
 rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose — rhinoscopia, ae f  
 science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology — pharmacologia, ae f  
 somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body —  
 somatologia, ae f  
 specialist studying forms of life and living organisms, biologist — biolōgus, i m  
 specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist —  
 anthropolōgus, i m  
 specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist (therapist) —  
 therapeutista, ae m  
 stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity —  
 stomatologia, ae f  
 therapist, specialist treating diseases of inner organs — therapeutista, ae m  
 thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax — thoracometria, ae f  
 treatment by means of medicinal herbs, phytotherapy — phytotherapia, ae f  
 treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy —  
 physiotherapia, ae f  
 the X-ray examination of mamma, mammography — mammographia, ae f

## Lesson 20

### One-word names of function disorders, pathological processes and abnormal conditions

#### § 124. ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS

Usually, one-word names of functional disorders are composed of Greek prefixes and roots. There are the following prefixes:

1. The prefix **a-** (before a consonant) or **an-** (before a vowel). This prefix signifies cessation or loss of a function as well as lack of property:

**adentia, ae f** — lack of teeth, adentia;

**anuria, ae f** — complete cessation of the secretion and excretion of urine, anuria;

**aphagia, ae f** — a condition in which the ability of swallowing is lacking, aphagia;

In the same way the Latin prefix **in-** (**im-** before consonants **b** or **m**) combined with Latin roots is used both in nouns and adjectives:

**incontinentia, ae f** — lack of voluntary control over the discharge of faeces or urine, incontinence;



**insufficiētia, ae f** — state of being inadequate to perform normal functions, insufficiency;

**immobilitas, ātis f** — lack of mobility, immobility;

**insensibilis, e** — lack of sensibility or intelligence, insensible.

2. The prefix **dys-** signifies functional disorders:

**dysgeusia, ae f** — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia;

**dysthyreōsis, is f** — imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreōsis;

**dysuria, ae f** — condition in which the passage of urine is difficult, dysuria.

3. The prefix **en-** (**em-** before consonants **b, m, p**) indicates the inner location of any morbid condition:

**empyēma, ātis n** — accumulation of pus in a cavity;

**enophthalmus, i m** — recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit

As prefixed elements some Greek adjectives, pronouns and numerals are used:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English translation
auto-	self-, resulting of one's own action	autopepsia, ae f (autolysis, is f)	the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia (autolysis)
mono-	one (part)	monoplegia, ae f	a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia
di-	two (parts)	diplegia, ae f	paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia
hemi-	half	hemialgia, ae f	neuralgic pain affecting the right or the left side of the body or the right or the left side of any part of the body, hemialgia

## § 125. ONE-WORD NAMES OF PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

The majority of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions are composed of Greek roots, suffixes and endings which are adapted to Latin grammar system. One group of terms consists of a root, a suffix and an ending. Two suffixes of this group compose a morphological unity with their endings:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
<b>-ismus</b> (suffix <b>-ism-</b> + <b>-us</b> , ending of the 2nd declension)	abnormality or pathological process, the meaning of which is determined by the root element	botulismus, i m	botulism	a form of food poisoning due to the botulinum toxin
<b>-ōsis</b>	pathological condition or	dermatōsis,	dermatōsis	any skin disease

(suffix <b>-os-</b> + <b>-is</b> , ending of the 3rd declension)	process	is f		
--	---------	------	--	--

**Attention!** The final suffix **-ōsis** may be used as the morphological part of a noun term not denoting a disease:

**diagnōsis**, is f — diagnosis, the scientific recognition of the disease from which a person suffers;

**sympiōsis**, is f — symbiosis, the intimate association of two organisms.

The next two suffixes are considered as final suffixed elements of the nouns of the 3rd declension:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
-ēma	different pathological conditions	enanthēma, ātis n	enanthema	the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue
-iāsis	different pathological conditions	psoriāsis, is f	psoriasis	a chronic disease of the skin characterized by the appearance of laminated scales

But the majority of terms composed of morphological elements present with initial and final roots. First of all, the root **path-** combined with the ending **-ia** is used:

**arthropathia**, ae f — any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy;

**nephropathia**, ae f — a disease of the kidney, nephropathy;

**rhinopathia**, ae f — any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy.

Other roots are also used as final elements which define more precisely the character of pathological condition, e. g.:

**angiorrhagia**, ae f — a hemorrhage from a vessel, angiorrhagia;

**arthralgia**, ae f — any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia;

**cancerophobia**, ae f — unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma, cancerophobia (=carcinomatophobia).

Nevertheless, about 20 % of one-word terms signifying pathological processes and abnormal conditions are nouns comprised of one root:

**coma**, ātis n — the state of complete loss of consciousness with a disorder of vitally important functions, coma;

**infarctus**, us m — an area of dead tissue produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarction;

**insultus**, us m — cerebral thrombosis, stroke;

**sepsis**, is f — infection with pyogenic microorganisms, sepsis

## § 126. INITIAL GREEK ROOTS AND THEIR LATIN EQUIVALENTS

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
angi-	vas, vasis n	vessel	angi-

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
arthr-	articulatio, ōnis f	joint	arthr-
brady-	lentus, a, um	slow	brady-
cephal-	caput, ĩtis n	head	cephal-
chondr-	cartilāgo, ĩnis f	cartilage	chondr-
dactyl-, -dactylia	digĭtus, i m	finger or toe	dactyl-
derm-, dermat-, -dermia	cutis, is f	skin	derm-, dermat-, -dermia
encephal-	cerēbrum, i n	brain	encephal-
my-	muscŭlus, i m	muscle	my-
nephr-	ren, renis m	kidney	nephr-
oste-	os, ossis n	bone	oste-
phon-, -phonia	vox, vocis f	voice	phon-, -phonia
phot-	lux, lucis f	light	phot-
phleb-	vena, ae f	vein	phleb-
pseud-	falsus, a, um	false	pseud-
spasm-, -spasmus	spasmus, i m	spasm	spasm-, -spasm
tox-, toxic-	venēnum, i n	poison	tox-, toxic-
tachy-	celer, ěris, ěre	fast, quick	tachy-
trich-, -trichia	capillus, i m; pilus, i m	hair	trich-
xer-	siccus, a, um	dry	xer-

### § 127. TABLE OF FINAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-algia	pain in any part of the body
-geusia	different pathological conditions of taste
-kinesia	different pathological conditions of voluntary motion
-malacia	pathological softening of an organ or tissue
-mania	any form of mental disorder accompanied by some degree of excitation
-mycōsis	a morbid condition caused by a pathogenic fungus
-opia, -opsia	any condition of vision
-pathia	a general name of a disease of any organ due to various causes
-pepsia	any condition of digestion
-phagia	any pathological condition in the act of swallowing
-philia	predisposition to any morbid condition
-phobia	a pathological fear
-plegia	paralysis (palsy) of the muscles of any organ
-pnoē	a pathological condition of breathing
-trophia	nutrition

### § 128. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

angi-, arthr-, chondr-, nephr-, phon-, phot-, phleb-, pseud-, tachy-, trich-

2. Give the Greek roots corresponding to the following Latin nouns or adjectives:

caput, ĩtis n; cutis, is f; digĭtus, i m; lentus, a, um; os, ossis n; siccus, a, um; vena, ae f; venĕnum, i n.

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term and its English equivalent:

angiopathia; arthromalacia; autohaemotherapia; autopepsia; bradyphagia; bradypnoĕ; chondrophia; dactylospasmus; dermatōsis; dermatomycōsis; dysgeusia; encephalogramma; gastrospasmus; hemicrania; hemianopsia; hemiplegia; monodactylismus; myoplegia; osteomalacia; osteopathia; phlebocarcinōma; photophobia; pseudoarthrōsis; spasmophilia; stomatomycōsis; tachycardia; toxicomania; xerophthalmia

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal quickness in eating; a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales; a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking; any disease affecting a joint; any disease of the skin; any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; any morbid condition of the nose; a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is affected; impairment of any voice; kind of pain affecting a joint; paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body; the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue; the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart; unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma

5. Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

angiology; apnoea; arthralgia; atrichia; atrophy; autolaryngoscopy; autopsy; biopsy; bradycardia; cephalalgia; didactylism; dystrophy; encephalomalacia; enophthalmus; hemiatrophy; hemophilia; mastopathy; monopathophobia, myopia, nephrogenic, nephropathy, ophthalmoplegia, osteochondrosis; osteodystrophy; pharmacophobia; phoniatics; phlebography; phonocardiogram; photophobia; proctospasm; rhinopathy; tachyphagia; toxicosis; xerostomia

## § 129. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 20

### Latin-English vocabulary

angiopathia, ae f — any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy

arthromalacia, ae f — softening of joints, arthromalacia

autohaemotherapia, ae f — a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy

autopepsia, ae f — the process of a spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia  
 bradyphagia, ae f — slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia  
 bradypnoë, es f — an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnoea  
 chondropathia, ae f — any disease affecting a cartilage, chondropathy  
 dactylospasmus, i m — spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm  
 dermatōsis, ae f — any disease of the skin, dermatosis  
 dysgeusia, ae f — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia  
 dermatomycōsis, ae f — a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi  
 encephalogramma, ātis n — any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram  
 gastrospasmus, i m — an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm  
 hemicrania, ae f — a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania  
 hemianopsia, ae f (=hemianopia, ae f) — loss of half the vision in each eye, hemianopsia (hemianopia)  
 hemiplegia, ae f — paralysis of one side of the body, hemiplegia  
 monodactylismus, i m — a congenital condition in which only one finger or toe is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism  
 myoplegia, ae f — paralysis of muscle or a condition in which muscular force is decreased, myoplegia  
 osteomalacia, ae f — softening of bones, osteomalacia  
 osteopathia, ae f — disease of bones, osteopathia  
 phlebocarcinōma, ātis n — a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein, phlebocarcinoma  
 photophobia, ae f — abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia  
 pseudarthrōsis, is f — a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudarthrosis  
 spasmophilia, ae f — a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and a spasm, spasmophilia  
 stomatomycōsis, is f — any morbid condition caused by a microscopical fungus, stomatomycosis  
 tachycardia, ae f — a rapid action of the heart, tachycardia  
 toxicomania, ae f — an insane desire for poison, toxicomania  
 xerophthalmia, ae f — a morbid condition of eyes, characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (=xeroma)

### **English-Latin vocabulary**

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia — tachyphagia, ae f

a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis — psoriāsis, is f  
 a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia — aphagia, ae f  
 angiology, the science of blood vessels — angiologia, ae f  
 any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy — arthropathia, ae f  
 any disease of the skin, dermatosis — dermatōsis, is f  
 any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia — arthralgia, ae f  
 any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy — rhinopathia, ae f  
 any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy — trichopathia, ae f  
 a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia — monoplegia, ae f  
 apnea, the cessation of breathing — apnoë, ës f  
 arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint — arthralgia, ae f  
 atrichia, not having hair — atrichia, ae f  
 atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause — atrophia, ae f  
 autolaryngoscopy, the examination of one's own larynx with a laryngoscope — autolaryngoscopia, ae f  
 autopsy, post-mortem examination of a body in order to establish the cause of death — autopsia, ae f  
 biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of issue cut from the living body — biopsia, ae f  
 bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate — bradycardia, ae f  
 cephalalgia, pain in the head — cephalalgia, ae f  
 didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or two toes on a foot — didactylismus, i m  
 dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition — dystrophia, ae f  
 encephalomalacia, softening of the brain — encephalomalacia, ae f  
 enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit — enophthalmus, i m  
 hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or one half of an organ — hemiatrophia, ae f  
 hemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted by females — haemophilia, ae f  
 impairment of the voice, dysphonia — dysphonia, ae f  
 mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland — mastopathia, ae f  
 monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease — monopathophobia, ae f  
 myopia, short sight — myopia, ae f  
 nephrogenic, produced by or originating in the kidney — nephrogēnus, a um  
 nephropathy, a disease of the kidney — nephropathia, ae f

ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles — ophthalmoplegia, ae f  
osteochondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues —  
osteochondrosis, is f  
osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition — osteodystrophia, ae f  
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia — diplegia, ae f  
pharmacophobia, a morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines —  
pharmacophobia, ae f  
phoniatics (=phoniatri), the treatment of disorders of speech — phoniatria, ae f  
phlebography 1) a radiographic visualization of veins; 2) the tracing of the venous  
pulse by means of a phlebograph — phlebographia, ae f  
phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart  
sounds — phonocardiogramma, ātis n  
photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light — photophobia, ae f  
proctospasm, a spasmodic contraction of the rectum — proctospasmus, i m  
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose — rhinopathia, ae f  
tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia — tachyphagia, ae f  
the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema — enanthēma, ātis n  
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia — diplegia, ae f  
the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart,  
angiocardiology— angiocardiology, ae f  
toxicosis, a pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons —  
toxicōsis, is f  
unfounded or unreasonable fear of a predisposition to carcinoma —  
cancerophobia, ae f  
xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland —  
xerostomia, ae f

## Lesson 21

### Names of qualitative and quantitative abnormalities in morphological structures and physiological processes

#### § 130. INCREASE AND DECREASE IN DIFFERENT QUANTITATIVE CONDITIONS

Increase and decrease of different quantitative conditions may, as a rule, be expressed by means of the prefixes **hyper-** and **hypo-** which are joined by final root elements:

**hyperaesthesia, ae f** — excessive sensitiveness of the skin, hyperaesthesia;  
**hyperkinesia, ae f** — a condition in which there is abnormally great strength of movement, hyperkinesia;

**hyperplasia, ae f** — any condition in which there is an increase in the number of cells in any body's part, hyperplasia;

**hypodynamia, ae f** — diminished muscular or nervous energy, hypodynamia;

**hypogalactia, ae f** — the secretion of a too small quantity of milk, hypogalactia;

**hypopepsia, ae f** — abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia.

Increase and decrease in the functional activity is sometimes expressed by means of the initial roots **tachy-** and **brady-**:

**tachypnoë, ës f** — abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea

**bradykinesia, ae f** — abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia

### § 131. INCREASE OR DECREASE IN DIMENSION OF ANATOMICAL AND HISTOLOGICAL STRUCTURES

Increase in size of anatomical or histological structures is expressed by means of the following initial and final roots: **dolich-**, **macr-**, **mega-**, **megal-**, **-megalia**:

**dolichocōlon, i n** — an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon

**macrocytus, i m** — a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte

**megaduodēnum, i n** — duodenum of abnormally large size, megaduodenum

**megalosplenja, ae f** — enlargement of the spleen, megalosplenja

**hepatomegalia, ae f** — a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia

Decrease in size of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the initial roots **brachy-** and **micr-**:

**brachydactylia ae f** — a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia

**microcephālus, i m** — a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus.

Dilatation or narrowing in volume of a hollow organ, cavity or tube is expressed by means of the following roots:

**-ectasia, -ectāsis, -dilatatio, sten-, -stenōsis**:

**bronchiectāsis, is f** — a condition of dilatation of a bronchus or bronchi, bronchiectasis

**gastrectasia, ae f** — dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia

**vasodilatatio, ōnis f** — dilatation of a blood vessel, vasodilatation

**stenostomia, ae f** — abnormal narrowness of the mouth, stenostomy



**oesophagostenōsis, is f** — narrowing of the oesophagus, oesophagostenosis

### § 132. INCREASE AND DECREASE IN THE QUANTITY OF ANATOMICAL AND HISTOLOGICAL STRUCTURES

Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the roots **olig-**, **poly-**, **-penia**:

**oligodontia (=oligodentia), ae f** — a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia

**polyarthropathia, ae f** — a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy

**erythropenia, ae f** — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes in the blood, erythropenia

Increase in the quantity of any anatomical or histological structure may also be expressed by the final prefix **-ōsis**:

**leucocytōsis, is f** — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis

**papillomatōsis, is f** — the condition of diffuse formation of papillomata, papillomatosis

### § 133. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Greek root and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word - building equivalents
aesthes-, -aesthesia	sensus, us m	sensibility, sensitiveness	aesthes-, -aesthesia
brachy-	brevis, e	short	brachy-
cheil-, -cheilia	labium, i n	lip	cheil-, -cheilia
cyt-, -cȳtus	cellŭla, ae f	cell	cyt-, -cyte
dolich-	longus, a, um	long	dolich-
erythr-	ruber, bra, brum	red	erythr-
gloss-, -glossia	lingua, ae f	tongue	gloss-, -glossia
glyc-	dulcis, e	sugar	glyc-
gnath-, -gnathia	maxilla, ae f	maxilla, upper jaw	gnath-, -gnathia
leuc-	albus, a, um	white	leuc-
macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalia	magnus, a, um	large	macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalia
melan-	niger, gram, grum	black	melan-
micr-	parvus, a, um	small	micr-
myel-, -myelia	1) medulla ossium 2) medulla spinālis	1) bone marrow 2) spinal cord	myel-, -myelia
odont-, -odonia, -dentia	dens, dentis, m	tooth	odont-, -odonia -dentia
olig-	parvus, a, um	few	olig-
pod-, -podia	pes, pedis m	foot	pod-, -podia
poly-	multus, a, um	many	poly-

splen-, -splenia	lien, ēnis m	spleen	splen-, -splenia
sphygm- -sphygmia	pulsus, us m	pulse	sphygm-, -sphygmia
therm-, -thermia	1) calor, ōris m 2) temperaturā, ae f	1) heat 2) temperature	therm-, -thermia
thyre-	glandūla thyr(e)oidea	thyroid (gland)	thyro-

**Attention!** 1. The initial roots **macr-** and **megal-** may be used in many (but not in all!) cases as synonyms: macrocephalia = megalcephalia, macropodia = megalopodia. When choosing the necessary variant of the initial root one should consult the dictionary.

2. The root **-cyt-** can be omitted if the term begins with **erythrocyt-** or **leucocyt-** and ends with **-penia**:

erythrocytopenia = erythropenia; leucocytopenia = leucopenia, but: monocytopenia, thrombocytopenia — the only variants.

### § 134. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-aemia	any condition of the blood
-genēsis	the origin and (formative) development
-genia	any condition of mandible
-mnesia	any condition of the memory
-penia	a diminution in the number of any kind of cells present in the blood
-phrenia	a condition associated with a serious mental disorder
-plasia	the development of tissues
-poēsis	the formation 1) of cells present in the blood; 2) of lymph; 3) of urine
-sthenia	any condition of strength, vigour or forcefulness
-tensio	a condition of arterial blood pressure
-tonia	a condition of muscular tension in the walls of vessels and bowels

### § 135. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

brachy-, dolich-, erythr-, glyc-, leuc-, melan-, micr-, olig-, poly-, thyre-

2. Write the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents and then give:

1) Greek equivalents corresponding to every Latin equivalent 2) English meaning of every pair of equivalents:

calor; cellūla; dens; labium; lingua; lien; magnus; maxilla; medulla ossium; pes; pulsus; sensus

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term as well as its English equivalent:

amnesia; anaesthesiolōgus; apodia; asthenia; brachycephālus; brachydactylia; dolichocephalia; dysthyreōsis; erythropenia; glossoplegia; glycaemia; hyperaemia; hyperthermia; hypotonia; leucocytōsis; melanoderma; microgenia; micromyelia; odontogenēsis; oligocytaemia; oligophrenia; polymastia; prognathia; sphygmogramma; splenomegalia; thermotherapia; thrombocytopoēsis; thyreotoxicōsis

4. *Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:*

abnormal narrowness of the mouth; abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion; abnormal sluggishness of physical movements; a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes; a condition of enlargement of the liver; an abnormally long colon of normal diameter; an increase in the total number of leucocytes; a pathological condition involving many joints; a person with an unusually small size of head; a red blood cell that is larger than normal; a state in which most of the teeth are lacking; a state in which there are too few erythrocytes; dilatation of the stomach; excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body; the origin and development of bone marrow; the origin and development of morbid condition; extremely rapid breathing

5. *Give the full definition and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:*

aglossia; anaemia; brachyoesophagus; cytology; dolichocolon; dystonia; erythema; gnathalgia; haematomyelia; hepatomegalia; hyperesthesia; hyperglycaemia; hypertension; hypomnesia; hypophrenia; hypoplasia; hypothermia; macrocyte; megaloduodenum; megalomania; melanocarcinoma; micromastia; microsphygmy; monocytopenia; myelocytæmia; oligodactylia; podagra; podalgia; polyavitaminosis; splenohepatomegaly

## § 136. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 21

### Latin-English vocabulary

amnesia, ae f — loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia

anaesthesiolōgus, i m — a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anaesthesiologist

apodia, ae f — congenital absence of feet, apodia

asthenia, ae f — loss of vital forces, asthenia

brachycephālus, i m — an individual with disproportionately short head, brachycephalic

brachydactylia, ae f — a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia

dolichocephalia, ae f — the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia

dysthyreōsis, ae f — imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

erythropenia, ae f — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia

glossoplegia, ae f — paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia  
glycaemia, ae f — a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia  
hyperaemia, ae f — an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia  
hyperthermia, ae f — very high body temperature, hyperthermia  
hypotonia, ae f — lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia  
leucocytōsis, is f — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis  
melanoderma, ātis n — a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma  
microgenia, ae f — a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia  
micromyelia, ae f — general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia  
odontogenēsis, is f — the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis  
oligocytaemia, ae f — a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia  
oligophrenia, ae f — congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia  
polymastia, ae f — a state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia  
prognathia, ae f — a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognatism  
sphygmogramma, ātis n — a record of the arterial pulse waves, sphygmogram  
splenomegalia, ae f — enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia  
thermotherapia, ae f — the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapia  
thrombocytopoēsis, is f — the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopoiesis  
thyreotoxicōsis, is f — any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis

### **English-Latin vocabulary**

abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia — hypopepsia, ae f  
abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnea — tachypnoë, ës f  
a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia — hepatomegalia, ae f  
a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia — brachydactylia, ae f  
aglossia, a congenital condition of being devoid of a tongue — aglossia, ae f  
an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon — dolichocōlon, i n  
anaemia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood — anaemia, ae f

an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis — leucocytōsis, is f  
 a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy —  
 polyarthropathia, ae f  
 a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus — microcephālus,  
 i m  
 a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte — macrocŷtus, i m  
 a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia — oligodontia, ae f  
 a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia — erythropenia, ae f  
 brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus — brachyoesophāgus, i m  
 dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia — gastrectasia, ae f  
 dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter — dolichocōlon, i n  
 cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells — cytologia, ae f  
 dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity — dystonia, ae f  
 erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia — erythēma, ātis n  
 excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia —  
 hyperaesthesia, ae f  
 extremely rapid breathing, tachypnea — tachypnoë, ës f  
 gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws — gnathalgia, ae f  
 haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord —  
 haematomyelia, ae f  
 hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver — hepatomegalia, ae f  
 hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body —  
 hyperaesthesia, ae f  
 hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood — hyperglycaemia,  
 ae f  
 hypertension, high arterial blood pressure — hypertensio, ōnis f  
 hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory — hypomnesia, ae f  
 hypophrenia, feebleness of mind — hypophrenia, ae f  
 hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part — hypoplasia, ae f  
 hypothermia, deficiency of body heat — hypothermia, ae f  
 macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal — macrocŷtus, i m  
 megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size — megaloduodēnum, i n  
 megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions  
 about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on —  
 megalomania, ae f  
 melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor —  
 melanocarcinōma, ātis n  
 micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands — micromastia, ae f  
 microsphygmy, diminished strength of pulse — microsphygmia, ae f  
 monocytopenia, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow —  
 monocytopenia, is f  
 myelocytæmia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood — myelocytæmia, ae f

oligodactylia, a congenital deficiency of fingers or toes — oligodactylia, ae f  
 podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of  
 arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid — podāgra, ae f  
 podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot — podalgia, ae f  
 polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several  
 vitamins — polyavitaminōsis, is f  
 splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen — splenohepatomegalia ae f  
 the origin and development of the bone marrow, myelogenesis — myelogenēsis,  
 is f  
 the origin and development of a morbid condition, pathogenesis —  
 pathogenēsis, is f

## Lesson 22

### Names of inflammatory processes which occur in organs and tissues. names of abnormalities in the states of physiological fluids

#### § 137. NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS

The state of inflammation in any organ or tissue, as a rule, is usually expressed by means of the final suffixed element **-ītis** which is transformed into **-itīdis** in the Genitive form. The suffix **-ītis** is added to the initial root of the noun which defines the place of a morbid state. All the terms with the suffix **-ītis** are nouns of the 3rd declension:

arthr- (joint) + ītis → **arthrītis, itīdis f** — inflammation of a joint, arthritis

hepat- (liver) + ītis → **hepatītis, itīdis f** — inflammation of the liver, hepatitis

The suffix **-ītis** may be added both to the Greek and Latin roots:

nephr- (Greek *nephros* kidney) + ītis → **nephrītis, itīdis f** — an inflammatory disease of the kidneys, nephritis

tonsill- (Latin *tonsilla*, ae f *tonsil*) + ītis → **tonsillītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the tonsil, tonsillitis

The site of the inflammatory process can be defined more precisely by means of the following prefixes of the Greek origin:

1) **endo-** (inner, mostly a mucous part of an organ):

endo + metr- (*utērus*, i m) + ītis → **endometrītis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis

2) **para-** (cellular, connective and other tissues near an organ):

para- + cyst (urinary bladder) + ītis → **paracystītis, itīdis f** — a condition of inflammation affecting the connective and other tissues lying close to the bladder, paracystitis

3) **peri-** (tissues enclosing an organ):

peri- + card- (heart) + ĩtis → pericardĩtis, itĩdis f — an inflammation of the membrane enveloping the heart, pericarditis.

Names of some inflammatory morbid conditions are formed without suffix -ĩtis, e. g.:

**panarĩtium, i n** — an inflammation in the nail fold, panaris (=panarĩtium);

**pneumonia, ae f** — an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung, pneumonia

### § 138. NAMES OF MORBID CONDITIONS OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS

Due to inflammatory processes some specific fluids may accumulate or be produced in cavities and tissues:

**exsudātum, i n** — a fluid extravasated into a cavity, exudate;

**transsudātum, i n** — any fluid that has passed through a membrane or the skin, transudate.

The abnormal accumulation of fluid in a tissue or cavity space is generally called **hydrops, ōpis m** — hydrops, dropsy. This noun is used with adjectives and any other noun:

**hydrops vesicae felleae** — fluid swelling in the gall bladder.

The presence of excessive fluid in the cavity of a definite part of the body is expressed by the prefix **hydro-** and a final root with the ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:

**hydrometra, ae f** — an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra;

**hydropericardium, i n** — excessive accumulation of serous fluid in the pericardium, hydropericardium;

**hydrarthrōsis, is f** — a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis.

Pus also refers to the fluids accumulated due to the inflammatory processes. The presence of pus is expressed in one-word terms by the initial root **py-** (Greek pus) and the final roots together with the grammar ending:

**pyopericardium, i n** — an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium;

**pyuria, ae f** — a condition in which pus is present in the urine.

The meaning “lymph” is denoted by the initial roots **chyl-** and **lymph-**.

The root **chyl-** is used if lymph is present in a cavity, in the blood or urine:

**chylothōrax, ācis m** — a condition in which there is an effusion of lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax;

**chyluria, ae f** — a condition in which the urine contains lymph, chyluria.

The root **lymph-** is used if lymph is considered as a part of lymphatic cells, glands and vessels:

**lymphocytōsis, is f** — an increase in the number of lymphocytes present in the blood, lymphocytosis;

**lymphadenopahia, ae f** — any morbid condition of the lymph gland, lymphadenopathy;

**lymphangiūtis, itīdis f** — an inflammation of lymphatic vessels, lymphangiitis.

Abnormal presence of blood in a cavity is expressed by the initial root **haem-** or **haemat-** which is added to a root and the final suffix **-ōsis** as well as any grammar ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:

**haemarthrōsis, is f** — an extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis;

**haematomētra, ae f** — an accumulation of blood or menstrual fluid in the cavity of uterus, haematometra;

**haemotympānum, i n** — the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum.

An abnormal state of blood circulation is mostly caused by embolaemia — a condition in which emboli are present in the blood. As a result, there occurs a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli — fragments of a blood clot, clumps of bacteria or other foreign bodies introduced into the circulation. Such a condition is named thromboembolism (thromboembolismus, i m or thromboembolia, ae f).

An abnormal cessation of the flow of blood, lymph or other physiological fluid is marked by the final root **-stāsis**:

**galactostāsis, is f** — an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk, galactostasis;

**lymphostāsis, is f** — cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis.

### § 139. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOTS

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalent in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
aden-	1) glandūla, ae f 2) adenoīdes, um f 3) nodus lymphaticus	1) gland 2) adenoids 3) lymphatic node	aden-
aēr-, pneum-, pneumat-	aēr, is m	air or a gas	aēr-, pneum-, pneumat-
chole-	bilis, is f; fel, fellis n	bile	chole-
cholecyst-	vesīca biliāris (fellea)	gall bladder	cholecyst-
1) chyl-, 2) lymph-	lymphā, ae f	chyle or lymph	chyl-, lymph-
col-, -colon	1) intestīnum crassum 2) colon	1) large intestine 2) colon	col-, -colon col-, -colon
cyst-	1) saccus, i m 2) vesīca, ae f 3) vesīca urinaria	1) sac 2) bladder 3) urinary bladder	cyst-
dacry-	lacrīma, ae f	tear	dacry-



Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
dacryocyst-	saccus lacrimālis	lacrimal sac	dacryocyst-
enter-	1) intestīnum tenue 2) intestīnum	1) small intestine 2) intestine	enter-
galact-, -galactia	lac, lactis n	milk	galact-, -galactia
hidr-	sudor, ōris m	sweat	hidr-
hydr-	1) aqua, ae f 2) liquor cerebrospinalis 3) exsudātum, i n 4) transsudātum, i n	1) water 2) cerebrospinal fluid 3) exudate 4) transudate	hydr-
lip-, seb-	1) adeps, ĩpis m 2) sebum, i n	1) fatty tissue of the body 2) the fatty secretion of the sebaceous glands	lip-, seb-
men-	mensis, is m	menses, the monthly discharge of blood from the uterus	men-
pan-, pant-	omnis, e	all	pan-, pant-
poli-	griseus, a, um	grey	poli-
py-	pus, puris n	pus	py-
sial-, -sialia	1) salīva, ae f 2) ductus salivarii	1) saliva 2) salivary ducts	sial-, -sialia
ur-, -uria	1) urea, ae f 2) urīna, ae f	1) urea, the chief nitrogenous constituent of urine; 2) urine	ur-, -uria
xanth-	flavus, a, um	yellow	xanth-

### § 140. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-chlorhydria	any state of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice
-chylia	secretion of the gastric juice
-menorrhoea	any condition of menses
-metra	any condition of the uterus
-rrhagia	hemorrhage (bleeding) in any part of the body
-rrhoea	profuse discharge of mucus or other fluid substance
-salivatio	secretion of saliva
-salpinx	any condition of the uterine tube
-stāsis	cessation of the flow of any physiological fluid
-thōrax	any condition of the thorax
-uria	any condition of the urine

### § 141. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

aden-, chole-, col-, cyst-, dacry-, enter-, hidr-, lip-, men-, poli-, py-, xanth-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

adeps, aër, aqua, flavus, griseus, lac, lacrima, liquor cerebrospinalis, saliva, sudor, vesica urinaria

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

achlorhydria; adenalgia; adenasthenia; aërobion; amenorrhoea; anaërobion; chylothorax; cholecystitis; cystorrhagia; dacryostenosis; empyema; enterocolitis; galactorrhoea; haemarthrosis; hidradenitis; hydrometra; hypochylia; hyposalivatio; lipuria; lymphostasis; menalgia; megacolon; pantalgia; polimyelitis; pyogænus; pyopneumothorax; pyosalpinx; uraemia; xanthopsia; xanthosis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened; acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain; an accumulation of pus in the pericardium; a discharge of pus; a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow; an excessive flow of milk; any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin; a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint; inflammation in the nail fold; inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus; inflammation of the liver; narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland; profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose; the presence of air or gas within a thorax; the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity; a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli; the presence of blood in the urine

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:

achylia; aerobic; anaerobic; chyluria; colonorrhagia; cystitis; dacryorrhoea; dysmenorrhoea; dropsy; embolaemia; endometritis; enteromegalia; enterogastritis; galactostasis; haematosalpinx; hydrarthrosis; hidrosis; hydrometra; hypersalivation; hypogalactia; lymphangitis; lymphocytosis; menalgia; panaris; paranephritis; pericystitis; pneumonia; pneumohaemothorax; polioencephalopathy; pyuria; thromboembolism; tonsillitis

## § 142. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 22

### Latin-English vocabulary

achlorhydria, ae f — a complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria

adenalgia, ae f — a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia

adenasthenia, ae f — functional deficiency in a gland, adenasthenia

aërobion, i n — a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen, aerobe (aerobian)

amenorrhoea, ae f — the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea

anaërobion, i n — a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived of either free oxygen or air, anaerobe

chylothōrax, ācis m — the condition in which there is an effusion of the lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax

cholecystītis, itīdis f — inflammation of the gallbladder, cholecystitis

cystorrhagia, ae f — haemorrhage from the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia

dacryostenōsis, is f — narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis

empyēma, ātis n — an accumulation of pus in a cavity, empyema

enterocolītis, itīdis f — an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis

galactorrhoea, ae f — an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea

haemarthrōsis, osis f — extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis

hidradenītis, itīdis f — inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis

hydromētra, ae f — an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra

hypochylia, ae f — a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia

hyposalivatio, ōnis f — a condition in which there is an abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva, hyposalivation

lipuria, ae f — the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria

lymphostāsis, is f — cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis

megacōlon, i n — a condition in which there is a great dilatation of the large intestine, megacolon

menalgia, ae f — painful menstruation, menalgia

pantalgia, ae f — pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia

polimyelītis, itīdis f — an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal cord due to polioviruses, polimyelitis

pyogēnus, a, um — forming or producing pus, pyogenic

pyopneumothōrax, ācis m — an inflammatory condition characterized by the presence of purulent fluid and gas in a pleural cavity, pyopneumothorax

pyosalpinx, ngis f — inflammation of the uterine tube which has progressed to pus formation, pyosalpinx

uraemia, ae f — the condition which is associated with the retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter, uraemia

xanthopsia, ae f — a disturbance of color vision, when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia

xanthōsis, is f — yellowish discoloration, especially of the skin, xanthosis

### English-Latin vocabulary

achylia, absence of acid and pepsin from the gastric juice — achylia, ae f  
a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia —  
hypochylia, ae f  
acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain, polioencephalitis —  
polioencephalitis, itīdis f  
a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea — pyorrhoea, ae f  
a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia —  
xanthopsia, ae f  
aerobe, a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen —  
aërobion, i n  
an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium — pyopericardium,  
i n  
anaerobe, a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived  
of either free oxygen or air — anaërobion, i n  
aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen in order to live — aërobīcus, a, um  
anaerobic, able to sustain life without free oxygen — anaërobīcus, a, um  
a narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis —  
dacryostenōsis, is f  
an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea — galactorrhoea, ae f  
any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin, transudate —  
transudātum, i n  
a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis — hydrarthrōsis, is f  
a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli,  
thromboembolia (thromboembolism) — thromboëmbolia, ae f  
(thromboëmbolismus, i m)  
chyluria, the condition in which the urine contains lymph — chyluria, ae f  
colonorrhagia, haemorrhage from the colon — colonorrhagia, ae f  
cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder — cystītis, itīdis f  
dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears — dacryorrhoea, ae f  
dropsy, an abnormal collection of fluid in tissue or cavity space — hydrops,  
ōpis m  
dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in the back and lower abdomen at or about  
the time of menses — dysmenorrhoea, ae f  
embolaemia, a condition in which emboli are present in the blood —  
embolaemia, ae f  
endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus —  
endometrītis, itīdis f  
enterogastritis, an inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach —  
enterogastrītis, itīdis f

enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine — enteromegalia, ae f  
 galactostasis, an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk — galactostāsis, is f  
 haematosalalpinx, a collection and retention of blood in an uterine tube —  
 haematosalalpinx, ngis f  
 hidrosis 1) a process of secreting sweat; 2) abnormally profuse sweating —  
 hidrōsis, is f  
 hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint — hydrarthrōsis, is f  
 hydrometra, an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus —  
 hydromētra, ae f  
 hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva — hypersalivatio, ōnis f  
 hypogalactia, secretion of too small a quantity of milk — hypogalactia, ae f  
 inflammation in the nail fold, panaris — panaritium, i n  
 inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis —  
 endometrītis, itīdis f  
 inflammation of the liver, hepatitis — hepatītis, itīdis f  
 lymphangitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels — lymphangītis, itīdis f  
 lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes — lymphocytōsis, is f  
 panaris, an inflammation in the nail fold — panaritium, i n  
 paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue  
 adjacent to the kidney — paranephritīs, itīdis f  
 pericystitis, an inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder  
 are affected — pericystītis, itīdis f  
 pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung — pneumonia, ae f  
 pneumohaemothorax, an accumulation of gas or air and blood in the cavity  
 of the thorax — pneumohaemothōrax, ācis m  
 polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of  
 the brain — polioencephalopathia, ae f  
 profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea — rhinorrhoea,  
 ae f  
 pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine — pyuria, ae f  
 the presence of air or gas within a thorax, pneumothorax — pneumothōrax,  
 ācis m  
 the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum —  
 haemotympānum, i n  
 the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria — haematuria, ae f  
 thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery,  
 by emboli — thromboembolismus, i m  
 tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil — tonsillītis, itīdis f

## Lesson 23

### One-word names of endogenous pathological changes and malformations

#### § 143. NAMES OF ABNORMAL ADHESIONS AND FISSURES

Conditions of abnormal adhesions of tissues are signified by means of the prefix **sym-** or **syn-** (before the consonants **d**, **p**, **t** or vowels) and the final roots defining the place of malformation:

**symblypharon, i n** — an adhesion of eyelid to the eyeball, symblepharon

**syndactylia, ae f** — a condition in which two or more fingers or toes are fused, syndactylia.

One-word names of fissures are formed by means of the final root **-schĭsis**:

**cystoschĭsis, is f** — a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis

**gnathoschĭsis, is f** — a congenital fissure in the maxilla, gnathoschisis

#### § 144. NAMES OF PATHOLOGICAL CAVITIES

Abscesses, cysts and hernias usually belong to pathological cavities.

Abscess (**abscessus, us m**) is an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration. This Latin noun is used mainly with adjectives:

**abscessus apicalis** — apical abscess, an abscess at the apex of the root of a tooth

**abscessus tonsillāris** — tonsillar abscess, a suppurative condition of the parenchyma of a tonsil.

Cyst (**cysta, ae f**) is a cavity lined by a well-defined epithelium, fibrous or degenerating tissue. This noun both in Latin and English is mainly used in two-word terms with adjectives and nouns:

**cysta choledōchi** — choledochus cyst, cystic dilatation in the common bile duct

**cysta pancreatīca** — pancreatic cyst, a cyst arising within or in close proximity to the pancreas.

Hernia (**hernia, ae f**) is the protrusion of an internal organ through a defect in the wall of the anatomical cavity in which it lies. The noun is used like the previous one with adjectives and nouns:

**hernia cerēbri** — hernia of the brain, protrusion of the brain through a defect in the skull

**hernia inguinālis** — inguinal hernia, hernia in the inguinal canal

In one-word terms, the idea of hernia is expressed by the final root **-cele**:

**gastrocēle, es f** — hernia of the stomach, gasrocele

**myocēle, es f** — hernia of a muscle, myocele

#### § 145. NAMES OF TUMORS

Names of tumors of a definite organ or tissues are formed by means of final suffix **-ōma** added to the initial root which indicates the localization of abnormal growth. All these names are nouns of the 3rd declension:

**angiōma, ātis n** — angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels

**nephrōma, ātis n** — nephroma, a tumor derived from renal substance

**osseōma, ātis n** — osseoma, a tumor of bone.

Some names of innocent tumors are formed without the suffix -oma:

**polypus, i m** polypus, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface

**verrūca, ae f** — a wart, a small circumscribed epidermal tumor.

Both nouns are used in multiword terms:

**polypus laryngis** — a polypus of larynx

**verrūca plana** — a plane wart.

A malignant tumor or any malignant growth is named cancer — cancer, cri m. This name is used with the nouns and adjectives which define localization of the tumor:

**cancer cutis** — cancer of the skin

**cancer gastris** — cancer of the stomach

**cancer osteolyticus** — osteolytic cancer, a cancer which destroys the bone that it has invaded.

A malignant epithelial tumor is called carcinoma — **carcinōma, ātis n**. This noun is used with adjectives mostly:

**carcinōma bronchogenicum** — a bronchogenic carcinoma, carcinoma originating from a bronchus

**carcinōma cutaneum** — carcinoma cutaneum, a squamous-celled carcinoma of the skin.

The name *carcinoma* can also be used as a final root of one-word terms:

**adenocarcinōma, ātis n** — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

**chondrocarcinōma, ātis n** — a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondrocarcinoma.

#### § 146. NAMES OF CONCREMENTS

A concrement is a pathological concretion — mostly a small mass which has become calcified in a cavity or in the tissue of a hollow anatomical structure. Such a concretion is denoted in Latin by the nouns **concrementum, i n** or **calcūlus, i m** and an adjective defining the localization of the concretion:

**concrementum nasāle** — nasal calculus

**calcūlus dentālis** — dental calculus

The names of these concretions may also be expressed by one-word terms by means of the final root -lithus (Greek **lithos** stone) added to initial roots: rhinolīthus, i m = concrementum nasāle

odontolīthus, i m = calcūlus dentālis.

The condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body is called calculosis — **calculōsis, is f**. The formation of concretions is named lithiasis — **lithiāsis, is f**. The same word is used as a final root of several one-word terms:

**broncholithiāsis, is f** — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

**cholecystolithiāsis, is f** — a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct, cholelithiasis

**nephrolithiāsis, is f** — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

**uro lithiāsis, is f** — a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis

#### § 147. NAMES OF ABNORMAL HARDENING AND SOFTENING OF TISSUES

Abnormal hardening (induration) of a tissue is expressed by the initial root **scler-** (Greek **skleros** hard) or the final element **-sclerosis**:

**sclerodesmia, ae f** — abnormal induration of ligaments, sclerodesmia

**osteosclerōsis, is f** — hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis

Abnormal softening of a tissue is expressed by the final root **-malacia** (Greek **malakia** softness):

**chondromalacia, ae f** — a pathological softening of a cartilage, chondromalacia

#### § 148. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOTS

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
carcin-	cancer, cri m	cancer	carcin-
hist-	textus, us m	tissue	hist-
lith-	calcūlus, i m concrementum, i n	stone concretion	lith-
mening-	pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater — the membranes which form the covering or sheaths of the spinal cord and brain	pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater	mening-
morph-	forma, ae f	form	morph-
necr-	mortuus, a, um	dead, lifeless	necr-
ne(o)-	novus, a, um	new	ne(o)-
onc-	tumor, ōris m	tumor, swelling	onc-
onych-	unguis, is m	nail	onych-



pachy-	crassus, a, um	thick	pachy-
pyel-	pelvis renālis	pelvis of the kidney	pyel-
sarc-	caro, carnis f	flesh	sarc-
scler-	durus, a, um	hard, hardening	scler-
splanchn-	viscus, ěris n; viscĕra, um n	a viscus; the viscera	splanchn-
spondyl-	vertĕbra, ae f	vertebra	spondyl-
sten-	strictus, a, um	narrow, narrowing	sten-
typhl-	caecum, i n	caecum	typhl-
uran-	palātum, i n	palate	palat-, uran-

**Attention!** Instead of the initial Greek root **uran-** the Latin root **palat-** can be used:

palatoplegia, ae f (palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate) =  
uranoplegia, ae f (uranoplegia)

palatoschĭsis, is f (palatoschisis, cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate) = uranoschĭsis, is f (uranoschisis)

### § 149. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

Final root elements	English meaning
-carcinōma	a malignant epithelial tumor
-cele	hernia
-lithiāsis	the formation of concretions
-lĭthus	a concretion
-malacia	pathological softening of an organ or tissue
-morphōsis	any state of the body form
-necrōsis	death of a portion of a tissue
-onychia	any abnormal condition of the nail
-porōsis	abnormal rarefaction of a bone by thinning of its trabeculae
-schĭsis	congenial fissure of a tissue
-sclerōsis	hardening of a tissue
-stenōsis	the constriction or narrowing of an orifice or the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ

### § 150. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

carcin-, hist-, lith-, mening-, morph-, necr-, ne(o)-, onc-, onych-, pachy-, scler-, typhl-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

caecum, calcŭlus, cancer, crassus, durus, mortuus, palātum, pelvis renālis, strictus, textus, viscĕra.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

adenocarcinōma; broncholithiāsis; carcinomatōsis; cystoschīsis; dacryostenōsis; gastrocēle; histolŷsis; meningiōma; metamorphōsis; micronychia; myocēle; necropneumonia; nephrolithiāsis; neoplasma; odontolithus; oncolōgus; onychomycōsis; osteonecrōsis; osteoporōsis; pachydactylia; palatoplegia; pyelītis; sarcōma; sclerōma; splanchnosclerōsis; spondylītis; stenothōrax; typhlectasia; uranoschīsis

4. *Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:*

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel; a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements; any diseased condition of the viscera; calculus on the teeth; causing the growth of tumors; congenital cleft of a vertebral arch or arches; congenital fissure of the urinary bladder; hardening of bony spaces; herniation of the uterus; inflammation affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder; inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord; paralysis affecting the soft palate; pathological softening of a cartilage; separation of a tissue as a result of its death; spasm of the caecum; the formation of concretions; the origin, formation and development of body tissue; the production and evolution of a form; the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system

5. *Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:*

adiponecrosis; angioma; calculosis; cancerogenic (=carcinogenic); carcinoma; cholecystolithiasis; chondroporosis; enterolithiasis; gnathoschisis; macronychia; meningoencephalitis; necraemia; neoarthrosis; oesophagostenosis; oncologist; oncotherapy; onychodystrophy; osteomalacia; pachycheilia; polyposis; rhinolith; sarcomatosis; sclerodermatitis; sialolith; spondylopathy; symblepharon; synphalangism; typhlocele

## § 151. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 23

### Latin-English vocabulary

adenocarcinōma, ātis n — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

broncholithiāsis, is f — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

carcinomatōsis, is f — a condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis

cystoschīsis, is f — a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis

dacryostenōsis, is f — a narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis

gastrocēle, es f — a hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele

histolŷsis, is f — a spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis

meningiōma, ātis n — a meningeal tumor, thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma  
 metamorphōsis, is f — a change of a form or structure, metamorphosis  
 micronychia, ae f — a small nail or small nails, micronychia  
 myocēle, es f — hernia of a muscle, myocele  
 necropneumonia, ae f — gangrene of the lung, necropneumonia  
 nephrolithiāsis, is f — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or renal calculi, nephrolithiasis  
 neoplasma, ātis n — any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm  
 odontlīthus, im — a calculus on the teeth, odontolith  
 oncolōgus, i m — a specialist treating tumors, oncologist  
 onychomycōsis, is f — an infection of nails caused by a fungus, onychomycosis  
 osteonecrōsis, is f — death of bony tissue, osteonecrōsis  
 osteoporōsis, is f — a rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis  
 pachydactylia, ae f — abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly  
 palatoplegia, ae f — paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia  
 pyelītis, itīdis f — an inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney, pyelitis  
 sarcōma, ātis n — a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma  
 sclerōma, ātis n — an area of indurated tissue, particularly in the mucous membrane of the nose or larynx, scleroma  
 splanchnosclerōsis, is f — hardening of any viscus, splanchnosclerosis  
 spondylītis, itīdis f — an inflammation of the spine, spondilitis  
 stenothōrax, ācis m — a short, narrow thorax or chest, stenothorax  
 typhlectasia, ae f — a dilatation of the caecum, typhlectasia  
 uranoschīsis, is f — cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate, uranoschisis

### English-Latin vocabulary

a calculus on the teeth, odontolith — odontolīthus, i m  
 a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondroma — chondrōma, ātis n  
 a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma — adenocarcinōma, ātis n  
 a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis — nephrolithiāsis, is f  
 a congenital cleft of a vertebral arch, spondyloschisis — spondyloschīsis, is f  
 a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis — cystoschīsis, is f  
 adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body — adiponecrōsis, is f  
 a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma — sarcōma, ātis n

a meningeal tumor thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma — meningiōma, ātis n

an abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly — pachydactylia, ae f

angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or lymphatic vessels — angiōma, ātis, n

any diseased condition of the viscera, splanchnopathy — splanchnopathia, ae f

a separation of a tissue as a result of its death, necrolysis — necrolŷsis, is f

calculosis, a condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body — calculōsis, is f

cancerogenic (=carcinogenic), producing carcinoma — cancerogĕnus, a, um

carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor — carcinōma, ātis n

causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous — oncogĕnus, a, um

cholecystolithiasis, a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct — cholecystolithiāsĭs, is f

chondroporosis, a porous condition of cartilage shown in thinning of the cartilage and formation of spaces and sinuses — chondroporōsis, is f

enterolithiasis, formation of calculi or concretions in the intestine — enterolithiāsĭs, is f

gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla — gnathoschĭsis, is f

hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis — osteosclerōsis, is f

herniation of the uterus, metrocele — metrocĕle, es f

inflammation affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder, pyelocystitis — pyelocystĭtis, itĭdis f

inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord, meningitis — meningĭtis, itĭdis f

macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails — macronychia, ae f

meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges — meningoencephalitis, itĭdis f

necraemia, a condition in which the blood loses its vitality — necraemia, ae f

nearthrosis, an artificial joint implanted by the surgical operation — nearthrōsis, is f

oesophagostenosis, a narrowing of the oesophagus — oesophagostenōsis, is f

oncologist, a specialist treating tumorous diseases — oncolōgus, i m

oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours — oncotherapia, ae f

onychodystrophy, malformation of the nails due to impaired nutrition — onychodystrophia, ae f

osteomalacia, softening of the bones — osteomalacia, ae f

pachycheilia, abnormal thickness or swelling of the lips — pachycheilia, ae f

paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia — palatoplegia, ae f

pathological softening of cartilage, chondromalacia — chondromalacia, ae f

polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane — polypōsis, is f

production of urinary calculi and a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis — urolithiāsis, is f  
 rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose — rhinolīthus, i m  
 sarcomatosis, a condition in which a number of sarcomata develop here and there on the body surface — sarcomatōsis, is f  
 sclerodermatitis, an inflammation and induration of the skin — sclerodermatītis, itīdis f  
 sialolith, a salivary calculus — sialolīthus, i m  
 spasm of the caecum, typhlospasm — typhlospasmus, i m  
 spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae — spondylopathia, ae f  
 symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball — symblephāron, i n  
 synphalangism, a condition in which the joints of certain fingers or toes are fused — synphalangismus, i m  
 the formation of concretions, lithiasis — lithiāsis, is f  
 the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis — histogenēsis, is f  
 the production and evolution of a form, morphogenesis — morphogenēsis, is f  
 typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum — typhlocēle, es f

## Lesson 24

### Names of deformations of tissue caused by exogenous factors. Names of surgical operations

#### § 152. GENERAL NAMES OF TISSUE DEFORMATIONS CAUSED BY DIFFERENT EXOGENOUS FACTORS

The most known general names of tissue deformations are the following one-word terms:

**deformatio, ōnis f** — a destruction of the form, deformation

**laesio, ōnis f** — an injury, damage suffered by the body

**trauma, ātis n** — a trauma, injury

**vulnus, ěris n** — a wound, any interruption by violence or by surgery, in the continuity of the external surface of the body or of the surface of any internal organ

More definite names are the following one-word terms:

**avulsio, ōnis f** — avulsion, a forcible removal of a portion from a hollow structure

**combustio, ōnis f** — burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat

**congelatio, ōnis f** — congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing

**commotio, ōnis f** — a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure

**compressio, ōnis f** — compression, the process of decreasing the volume and increasing the density of the body by means of force applied externally

**dislocatio, ōnis f** — a dislocation, an abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint

**ectopia, ae f** — ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or its part

**fractūra, ae f** — a fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone

**luxatio, ōnis f** — a luxation, a dislocation of a bone

**ruptūra, ae f** — a rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or another anatomical structure. With the same meaning, but only in one-word terms, the final root **-rrhexis** (Greek rhexis a break) is used:

**metrorrhexis, is f** — metrorrhexis, rupture of the uterus

**ophthalmorrhexis, is f** — ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the eyeball

**prolapsus, us m** — prolapse, a sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part. With the same meaning the final root **-ptōsis** is used:

**gastroptōsis, is f** — gastroptosis, a downward displacement of the stomach

**splenoptōsis, is f** — splenoptosis, a prolapse of the spleen

### § 153. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS

The most common names of surgical operations are the following:

**operatio, ōnis f** — an operation, surgical intervention upon a part of the body

**amputatio, ōnis f** — an amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage

**extirpatio, ōnis f** — an extirpation, a removal of the entire pathological structure, organ or part

**extractio, ōnis f** — an extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body

**implantatio, ōnis f** — an implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body

**punctūra, ae f (punctio, ōnis f)** — a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it. In one-word terms, the final root **-centēsis** corresponds to the two-word terms which include the noun **puncture** and the second noun signifying the site of this operation, e. g.:

punctūra thorācis = thoracocentēsis    punctūra pulmōnis = pneumocentēsis

**replantatio, ōnis f** — replantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place.

**transplantatio, ōnis f** — a transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function

**resectio, ōnis f** — a resection, a surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, colon etc.

**sectio, ōnis f** — a section, the act of cutting

#### § 154. PREFIXES WIDELY USED IN SURGICAL NAMES

Latin prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent and its meaning
a-, ab-	away, from	avulsio, ōnis f aberratio, ōnis f	avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure aberration, a deviation from the normal
de(s)-	away, from	decapsulatio, ōnis f descensus, us m	decapsulation, surgical removal of a capsule or sheath descent, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part
dis-	apart, separation	disarticulatio, ōnis f	disarticulation, separation or amputation in a joint without cutting through bone
im-, in-	in, into	implantātum, i n invasio, ōnis f	implant, any piece of tissue for use as a graft invasion, the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host
e-, ex-	from, out of	extractio, ōnis f evisceratio, ōnis f	extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body evisceration, removal of the contents of an organ or its part
re-	again	replantatio, ōnis f	replantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place
trans-	through, across	transplantatio, ōnis f	transplantation, the operation of transfer of tissue from one site to another

#### § 155. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOTS

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
blephar-	palpēbra, ae f	eyelid	blephar-
chir-	manus, us f	hand	chir-
colp-	vagīna, ae f	vagina	colp-
cry-	gelu, us n	cold	cry-
crypt-	latens, ntis	hidden	crypt-
desm-	ligamentum, i n	ligament	desm-
embryo-	1) embryo, ōnis m 2) fetus, us m	1) embryo, a living organism from the fertilized ovum to the first 8 weeks of intrauterine life 2) fetus, a living organism after first 8 weeks of intrauterine life	embryo-
kerat-	cornea, ae f	1) cornea 2) the horny layer of the skin	kerat-
lapar-	abdōmen, ĩnis n	abdomen	lapar-

pneum-, pneumon-	pulmo, ōnis m	lung	pneum-, pneumon-
salping-	1) tuba uterīna 2) tuba auditīva (=tuba auditoria)	1) the uterine tube 2) the pharyngotympanic tube (=auditory tube)	salping-
ten-	tendo, ĩnis m	tendon	ten-
top-	locus, i m	place	top-

### § 156. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

Final roots elements	English meaning
-chirurgia	surgical operation
-centēsis	tapping or puncture of a cavity, -centesis
-dēsĭs	operative fixation of a structure, -desis
-ectomia	amputation or excision of an organ or its part, -ectomy
-implantatio	the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, -implantation
-lysis	surgical freeing of a tissue from adhesions
-pexia	surgical fixation by means of sutures, -pexis, -pexy
-plastĭca	an operation dependent upon the transposition of skin or other tissue, -plasty
-rrhaphia	the suturing together of the cut or torn edges of a wound, -rrhaphy
-rrhexis	rupture or bursting of an organ or vessel, -rhexis
-stōma	an artificial opening created by surgical operation
-stomia	creation of an artificial opening, -stomy
-tomia	operative cutting, incision or section, -tomy
-transplantatio	the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function, -transplantation

### § 157. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

blephar-, chir-, colp-, cry-, crypt-, desm-, embryo-, kerat-, lapar-, pneum-, salping-, ten-, top-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

abdōmen, cornea, embryo, gelu, latens, locus, manus, palpēbra, pulmo, tendo, tuba uterīna.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English the full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

avulsio; blepharĭtis; blepharoplastĭca; colpotomia; combustio; cryochirurgia; cryotherapia; cryptophthalmia; decapsulatio; descensus; desmorrhaxis; desmurgia; disarticulatio; embryologia; embryotomia; evisceratio; gastrostōma;



hyperkeratōsis; implantatio; implantātum; keratotomia; laparoscopia; laparogastrostomia; pneumocentēsis; prolapsus; pneumoēmpyēma; replantatio; resectio; salpingectomy; salpingolysis; spondylodēsis; tenorrhaphia; tenotomia; thoracocentēsis; toponeurōsis

4. *Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:*

a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure; adenoma of the eyelid; a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system; a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum; any disease affecting ligaments; any morbid condition affecting the lungs; any plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder; any plastic surgical operation on the vagina; a tumor consisting of connective-tissue element; incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus; inflammation of abdominal muscles; inflammation of the cornea; polypus of the vagina; puncture of the cornea; removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part; retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital acquired genital-canal stenosis; surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope; the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body; the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host; the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the size of the latter; the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision; the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing a function; the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder; total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue; use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure

5. *Give the full definition of each term and its Latin dictionary form:*

arthrocentesis; autoplasty; blepharotomy; colpocystotomy; colpomyomectomy; colpohysteropexy; congelation; cryosurgery; cryptolith; cryptopsoriasis; desmalgia; desmotomy; dislocation; ectopia; embryectomy; embryopathology; implant; implantation; keratomycosis; keratoplasty; oesophagostoma; pneumorrhaphy; pneumotomy; puncture; salpingogram; salpingopexy; tenodesis; tenolysis; tonsillotomy; topography; topophobia

## § 158. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 24

### Latin-English vocabulary

avulsio, ōnis f — a forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure, avulsion

blepharītis, itīdis f — an inflammation of the eyelids, blepharitis

blepharoplastīca, ae f — a plastic operation for restoration of an eyelid or any part of it, blepharoplasty

colpotomia, ae f — any cutting operation on the vagina, colpotomy

combustio, ōnis f — an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat, burn  
 cryochirurgia, ae f — surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing, cryosurgery  
 cryotherapia, ae f — the science of the use of cold as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy  
 cryptophthalmia, ae f — a congenital adhesion of the eyelids so that the eyeballs can not be seen, cryptophthalmia  
 decapsulatio, ōnis f — a surgical removal of a capsule or sheath, decapsulation  
 descensus, us m — the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, descent  
 desmorrhēsis, is f — rupture of a ligament, desmorrhēsis  
 desmurgia, ae f — the science of applying ligatures or bandages to a part, desmurgy  
 disarticulatio, ōnis f — a separation or amputation at a joint, without cutting through bone, disarticulation  
 embryologia, ae f — a branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extra-uterine life, embryology  
 embryotomia, ae f — a dissection of an embryo or fetus, embryotomy  
 evisceratio, ōnis f — a removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration  
 gastrostōma, ātis n — a natural or artificial gastric fistula, gastrostoma  
 hyperkeratōsis, is f — a hypertrophy of the stratum corneum of the skin, hyperkeratosis  
 implantatio, ōnis f — the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, implantation  
 keratotomia, ae f — making an incision into the cornea, keratotomy  
 laparoscopia, ae f — the act or process of examining the peritoneal cavity and its contents by means of a laparoscope, laparoscopy  
 laparogastrostomia, ae f — the operation to create an artificial opening in the stomach, laparogastrotomy  
 pneumocentēsis, is f — a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of a cavity, pneumocentesis  
 pneumoēmpyēma, ātis n — the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space, pneumoēmpyema  
 prolapsus, us m — the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, prolapse  
 replantatio, ōnis f — the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place, a replantation  
 resectio, ōnis f — a surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, etc., a resection  
 salpingectomia, ae f — an excision of an uterine tube, salpingectomy

salpingolýsis, is f — breaking-down of adhesions in an uterine tube, salpingolysis  
spondyloděsis, is f — the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone graft, spondylodesis  
tenorrhaphia, ae f — an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon, tenorrhaphy  
tenotomia, ae f — the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy  
thoracocentěsis, is f — a puncture of the wall of the thorax to remove fluid, thoracocentesis  
toponeurōsis, is f — localized neurosis, a functional derangement in any part of the body, toponeurosis

### English-Latin vocabulary

a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure — commotio, ōnis f  
adenoma of the eyelid, blepharoadenoma — blepharoadenōma, ātis n  
a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, a neurosurgeon — neurochirurgus, i m  
a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum, an embryoneoplasm — embryoneoplasma, ātis n  
any disease affecting the ligaments, desmopathia — desmopathia, ae f  
any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy — pneumopathia, ae f  
any plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder, cystoplasty — cystoplastīca, ae f  
any plastic surgical operation on the vagina, colpoplasty — colpoplastīca, ae f  
a polypus of the vagina, colpopolypus — colpopolýpus, i m  
a prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part — prolapsus, us m  
a puncture of the cornea, keratocentesis — keratocentěsis, is f  
arthrocentesis, the surgical procedure of puncturing a joint — arthrocentěsis, is f  
a surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope, microsurgery — microchirurgia, ae f  
a tumor consisting of connective tissue, desmoneoplasm — desmoneoplasma, ātis n  
autoplasty, the repair of a diseased or injured tissue or organ by the material taken from another part of the body — autoplastīca, ae f  
blepharotomy, an incision of an eyelid — blepharotomia, ae f  
colpocystotomy, a surgical incision into the urinary bladder through the wall of the vagina — colpocystotomia, ae f  
colpohysteropexy, the operative fixation of the uterus through the vagina — colpohysteropexia, ae f

colpomyomectomy, a removal of a myoma from the uterus by the vaginal route — colpomyomectomia, ae f  
 congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing — congelatio, ōnis f  
 cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing — cryochirurgia, ae f  
 cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt — cryptolīthus, i m  
 cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis — cryptopsoriāsis, is f  
 desmalgia, pain in a ligament — desmalgia, ae f  
 dislocation, abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint — dislocatio, ōnis f  
 ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or its part — ectopia, ae f  
 embryectomy, the surgical removal of the embryo — embryectomia, ae f  
 embryopathology, the branch of pathology concerned with defective or abnormal development of embryo — embryopathologia, ae f  
 implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft — implantātum, i n  
 incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysterectomy — laparohysterectomy, ae f  
 inflammation of the abdominal muscles, laparomyositis — laparomyosītis, itīdis f  
 keratomycosis, a disease of cornea caused by a fungus — keratomycōsis, is f  
 keratoplasty, plastic surgery on the cornea — keratoplastīca, ae f  
 oesophagostoma, any opening into the esophagus apart from the normal entrance and exit — oesophagostōma, ātis n  
 ophthalmorrhaxis, rupture of the eyeball — ophthalmorrhaxis, is f  
 pneumocentesis, a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity — pneumocentēsis, is f  
 pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space — pneumoēmpyēma, ātis n  
 pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung — pneumorrhaphia, ae f  
 pneumotomy, making an incision into the lung — pneumotomia, ae f  
 puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it — punctūra, ae f; punctio, ōnis f  
 removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, amputation — amputatio, ōnis f  
 retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital or acquired genital canal stenosis, cryptomenorrhoea — cryptomenorrhoea, ae f  
 removal of an entire pathological structure, an organ or part, extirpation — extirpatio, ōnis f

salpingogram, the radiograph made during the radiographic visualization of the uterus and uterine tubes — salpingogramma, ātis n  
 salpingopexy, surgical fixation of the uterine tube — salpingopexia, ae f  
 tenodesis, operative fixation of a tendon — tenodēsis, is f  
 tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon from adhesions — tenolýsis, is f  
 the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction — extractio, ōnis f  
 the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion — invasio, ōnis f  
 the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body — implantatio, ōnis f  
 the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the latter, herniotomia — herniotomia, ae f  
 the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision, adenotomy — adenotomia, ae f  
 the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing of a function, transplantation — transplantatio, ōnis f  
 the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder, cystostomy — cystostomia, se f  
 tonsillotomy, the surgical operation for removal of a part of a tonsil — tonsillotomia, ae f  
 topography, the anatomical description of any particular part of the body — topographia, ae f  
 topophobia, unreasoned fear of certain places — topophobia, ae f  
 total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue, pneumonectomy — pneumonectomia, ae f  
 use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy — cryotherapia, ae f

## Lesson 25

### Multiword clinical terms. Part № 1

#### § 159. THE STRUCTURE AND VOCABULARY OF MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS

Multiword terms are widely used in medical diagnoses. Any multiword term consists, as a rule, of two or three words. The noun containing the cardinal information of the term is placed first, and then one or two nouns or one or two adjectives follow. The second and third nouns indicate the localization of the diseased organ or tissue; adjectives give qualitative and quantitative characteristics of the morbid condition:

**infarctus cerēbri** — cerebral infarct, an infarct of cerebral tissue due to failure of blood supply resulting from vascular thrombosis, embolism or spasm

**tachycardia ventricūli sinistri** — tachycardia of the left ventricle, abnormally rapid rate of the left ventricle

**anaemia haemorrhagīca** — haemorrhagic anaemia, anaemia caused by acute or chronic loss of blood because of whatever cause

**myocardītis bacterialis acuta** — acute bacterial myocarditis, acute inflammation of the myocardium due to invasion of bacteria

The combination of a noun and an adjective after the first noun of the term can be present too:

**cirrhōsis biliāris infantium** — biliary cirrhosis of children, cirrhosis of young children due to congenital anomalies of the bile ducts

**luxatio coxae congenīta** — congenital dislocation of the hip

To sum up, we can say that multiword clinical terms are built similar to anatomical ones. First of all, the dictionary form of every word should be given. After that, the term is built according to the already known rules.

## § 160. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

abdōmen acūtum; *diabētes* mellītus; diagnōsis aetiologīca; febris continua; fetor ex ore sive *halitōsis*; herpes labiālis; indigestio gastris; *infarctus* thrombotīcus; insufficientia renālis chronīca; morbus maculōsus neonatōrum; *palpatio* et *percussio* hepātis; *polyuria* diabetīca; *prophylaxis* morbōrum allergicōrum; *syndrōmum* unguium flavōrum; *toxicōses* gravidārum; vitium cordis congenītum

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

acute suppurative *bronchitis*; allergic *stomatitis*; cardinal *symptoms*; cerebrospinal hereditary *paralysis*; chronic superficial *dermatitis*; *collapse* of the lung; *endogenous eczema*; *exogenous* tuberculosis; hypoglycaemic *coma*; intermittent hepatic fever; plasma *transfusion*; primary atypical *pneumonia*; simple *urethritis*; spongiform subacute *encephalopathy*; *syndrome* of the cerebral peduncle; tissue *emphysema*; ultrasonic *tomography*

## § 161. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 25

### Latin-English vocabulary

acūtus, a, um — acute

aetiologīcus, a, um — aetiologic, based on the aetiology — the science of the investigation of the cause or origin of any phenomenon

chronīcus, a, um — chronic, long continued

congenītus, a, um — congenital

continuus, a, um — continued  
 diabētes, ae m — diabetes, a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism  
 diabeticus, a, um — diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes  
 diagnōsis, is f — diagnosis, medical denotation of the disease from which a person suffers  
 febris, is f — fever  
 foetor, ōris m — fetor, a foul odour or stench  
 gravīda, ae f — gravida, a woman who is pregnant  
 halitōsis, is f — halitosis, fetid or offensive breath  
 herpes, ētis m — herpes, inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles  
 indigestio, ōnis f — indigestion, any disturbance of the normal process of digestion  
 infarctus, us m — infarct (infarction), a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery  
 insufficientia, ae f — insufficiency, the state of being inadequate to perform normal function  
 mellītus, a, um (diabētes) — mellitus (diabetes), characterized by a high — fasting blood sugar  
 maculōsus, a, um — a maculate, marked by maculae  
 morbus, i m — a disease  
 neonātus, a, um — a newly born child  
 palpatio, ōnis f — palpation, the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs  
 percussio, ōnis f — percussion, the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed  
 polyuria, ae f — polyuria, increase in the amount of the urine excreted  
 prophylaxis, is f — prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease  
 sive — or  
 syndrōmum, i n — a syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease  
 thrombotīcus, a, um — thrombotic, characterized or caused by thrombosis  
 toxicōsis, is f — toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison  
 vitium, in — a defect or a vice, vitium

### English-Latin vocabulary

acute — acūtus, a, um  
 alimentary — alimentarius, a, um

a symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function —  
 symptōma, ātis n  
 a syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture  
 of the disease — syndrōmum, i n  
 a tissue — textus, us m  
 a transfusion, the introduction into the blood vessels of the circulatory system of  
 sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions — transfusio,  
 ōnis f  
 cardinal — cardinālis, e  
 chronic — chronīcus, a, um  
 collapse, a state of extreme weakness with physical and mental depression —  
 collapsus, us m  
 coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot  
 be roused by any ordinary external stimulus — coma, ātis n  
 eczema, a non-contagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching  
 and burning — eczēma, ātis n  
 emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated —  
 emphysēma, ātis n  
 endogenous, having origin within the organism — endogēnus, a, um  
 exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism — exogēnus,  
 a, um  
 fever — febris, is f  
 hereditary — hereditarius, a, um  
 hypoglycaemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about hypoglycaemia,  
 a low blood sugar concentration — hypoglycaemīcus, a, um  
 intermittent, coming and going at intervals — intermittens, ntis  
 paralysis, loss of motor power due to a functional or organic disorder of neural  
 or neuromuscular mechanism — paralýsis, is f  
 plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which the blood corpuscles are  
 suspended — plasma, ātis n  
 pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung — pneumonia, ae f  
 peduncle — peduncŭlus, i m  
 primary — primarius, a, um  
 spongiform, having resemblance to a sponge — spongiformis, e  
 subacute, (disease) running a moderately rapid and severe course for which  
 the word acute would not be appropriate — subacŭtus, a, um  
 suppurative, pus-forming — suppuratīvus, a, um  
 tomography, body-section radiography — tomographia, ae f  
 ultrasonic, ultrasound — ultrasonarius, a, um



**Lesson 26**  
**Multiword clinical terms. Part № 2**

**§ 162. EXERCISES**

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

*alopecia* occipitālis neonatorum; *gastrorrhoea* continua chronica; *granuloma* benignum glandulae thyroideae; *infectio* latens; inflammatio bacteriālis; insufficiētia arteriārum mesentericārum; *lymphangioma* simplex; *melanosis* iridis; *myasthenia* laryngis; *myelitis* traumatica; *neuralgia* faciālis vera; *neuritis* puerperālis; *osteitis* deformans; *osteoma* spongiōsum; *prolapsus* recti; *psychosis* senilis; situs viscerum inversus; *spasmus* intestinorum

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

acquired immune deficiency *syndrome* (AIDS); benign lymphocytic *meningitis*; cerebral *oedema*; chronic *glossitis* with *anaemia*; diffuse *goitre*; direct *metastasis*; *dropsy* of the gall bladder; fetal gigantism; geminated composite *odontome*; intravenous *narcosis*; infective *hepatitis*; monostotic fibrous *dysplasia*; odontogenic *fibroma*; pelvic *haematoma*; postoperative *thrombosis*; *psychogenic* headache; secondary *glaucoma*; senile *osteoporosis*; viral *enteritis*

**§ 163. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 26**

**Latin-English vocabulary**

alopecia, ae f — alopecia, loss of hair  
bacteriālis, e — bacterial, belonging to or consisting of bacteria  
benignus, a, um — benign  
continuus, a, um — continued  
deformans, ntis — deforming  
gastrorrhoea, ae f — gastrorrhoea, the secretion by the stomach of an abnormally large quantity of gastric juice or of mucus  
granuloma, ātis n — a granuloma, a tumour composed of granulation tissue  
infectio, ōnis f — an infection, the invasion of a pathogenic organism into the body and its subsequent multiplication  
inflammatio, ōnis f — an inflammation  
insufficiētia, ae f — insufficiency  
inversus, a, um — inverse  
latens, ntis — hidden  
lymphangioma, ātis n — lymphangioma, a tumor formed of lymphatic tissue  
mesentericus, a, um — mesenteric  
melanosis, is f — melanosis, an abnormal deposition of the black pigment (melanin) in the skin or other tissues

myasthenia, ae f — myasthenia, weakness of muscles from whatever cause  
 myelītis, itīdis f — myelitis, an inflammation of the bone marrow  
 neuralgia, ae f — neuralgia, a painful affection of the nerves due to functional  
 disturbances or to neuritis  
 neurītis, itīdis f — neuritis, an inflammation of a nerve  
 osteītis, itīdis f — osteitis, an inflammation of a bone due to infection or injury  
 osteōma, ātis n — osteoma, an innocent tumor of a bone  
 prolapsus, us m — prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a part or viscus  
 psychōsis, is f — psychosis, any kind of mental disorder  
 puerperālis, e — puerperal  
 senīlis, e — senile  
 situs, us m — a position, a site  
 spasmus, i m — a spasm, a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of  
 a muscle  
 spongiōsus, a, um — spongy, (spongious), full of small holes, like a sponge  
 traumaticus, a, um — traumatic  
 verus, a, um — true  
 viscus, ěris n — a viscus or viscera, the internal organs of the body which are  
 closely related to the great serous cavities — pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

### English-Latin vocabulary

acquired — acquisītus, a, um  
 benign — benignus, a, um  
 composite — composītus, a, um  
 deficiency — deficientia, ae f  
 diffuse — diffūsus, a, um  
 direct — directus, a, um  
 dropsy — hydrops, ōpis m  
 dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue — dysplasia, ae f  
 enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines — enterītis,  
 itīdis f  
 fetal — fetalis, e  
 fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue — fibrōma,  
 ātis n  
 fibrous — fibrōsus, a, um  
 geminated — geminātus, a, um  
 gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness — gigantismus, i m  
 glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences —  
 glaucōma, ātis n  
 glossitis, an inflammation of the tongue — glossītis, itīdis f  
 goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland — struma, ae f  
 headache — dolor (ōris m) capitis

haematoma, a tumor or swelling composed of blood — haematōma, ātis n  
 immune — immūnus, a, um  
 immunodeficiency — immunodeficientia, ae f  
 infective — infectīvus, a, um  
 intravenous — intravenōsus, a, um  
 lymphocytic — lymphocytīcus, a, um  
 metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of  
 the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity — metastāsis, is f  
 monostotic, pertaining to a single bone — monostotīcus, a, um  
 narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis —  
 narcōsis, is f  
 odontome, a solid or cystic tumour occurring in the jaws which is derived from  
 cells concerned in tooth development — odontōma, ātis n  
 odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth — odontogēnus, a, um  
 oedema, the presense of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue  
 spaces of the body — oedēma, ātis n  
 osteoporosis, a rarefaction of bone — osteoporōsis, is f  
 postoperative — postoperatīvus, a, um  
 psychogenic, developing or originating because of mental causes —  
 psychogēnus, a, um  
 secondary — secundarius, a, um  
 senile — senīlis, e  
 thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life, producing a thrombus —  
 thrombōsis, is f  
 viral — virālis, e

## Lesson 27

### Multiword clinical terms. Part № 3

#### § 164. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

*abscessus* gingivālis; *avulsio* nervi phrenīci; calcūlus venōsus; *carcinōma*  
 in situ; *combustio* thermālis faciēi; *commotio* cerēbri; *congelatio* digitōrum  
 pedis dextri; *ectopia* oculi; *erosio* cervīcis utēri; *extractio* corpōris aliēni; *polypi*  
 laryngis; *punctio* lumbālis; ruptūra ligamentōrum hepātis; *sectio* cadavēris;  
*transplantātum* corneae; ulcus perfōrans duodēni; *verrūcae* planae

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

breast *amputation*; chemical burn of the oesophagus; closed fracture of  
 the right femur; *concussion* of the retina; *evisceration* of the eye; functional

aortic *stenosis*; internal injury; lung calculi; open operation; partial *ophthalmoplegy*; *resection* of a joint and a rib; splenic *puncture*; subcutaneous wound; *replantation* of the left hand; tendon *transplantation*; traumatic *erythema*; *ulceration* of the stomach

## § 165. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 27

### Latin-English vocabulary

abscessus, us m — abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration

aliēnus, a, um — foreign

avulsio, ōnis f — avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a follow structure

combustio, ōnis f — burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat

commotio, ōnis f — a concussion or a violent shaking of a structure

congelatio, ōnis f — congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing

ectopia, ae f — ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part

erosio, ōnis f — erosion, any superficial destructive process

extractio, ōnis f — extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body

gingivālis, e — gingival

partialis, e — partial

planus, a, um — plane

phrenīcus, a, um — phrenic

perforans, ntis — perforating

polypus, i m — a polyp, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface

punctio, ōnis f — a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it

ruptūra, ae f — rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of a bone or another structure

sectio, ōnis f — a section, the act of cutting

sectio cadavēris — a post-mortem examination of dead body

thermalis, e — thermal

transplantātum, i n — a transplant, a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another

verrūca, ae f — a wart

### English-Latin vocabulary

amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other  
 appendage — amputatio, ōnis f  
 aortic — aortīcus, a, um  
 breast — mamma, ae f  
 burn — combustio, ōnis f  
 calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion — calcūlus, i m  
 chemical — chemīcus, a, um  
 closed — clausus, a, um  
 concussion, a violent shaking of a structure — commotio, ōnis f  
 erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia — erythēma, ātis n  
 fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone — fractūra, ae f  
 functional — functionālis, e  
 injury — laesio, ōnis f  
 open — apertus, a, um  
 operation — operatio, ōnis f  
 ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of the ocular muscles — ophthalmoplegia,  
 ae f  
 partial — partiālis, e  
 puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish  
 the nature of its content or to empty it — punctio, ōnis f  
 resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw,  
 stomach, colon etc. — resectio, ōnis f  
 splenic — splenīcus, a, um

**§ 166 MODEL (SAMPLE) OF THE FINAL TEST  
 IN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY**

1. *Give Greek initial roots and Latin equivalents (in the dictionary form) with the following meaning:*

1) ear; 2) child; 3) head; 4) voice; 5) quick; 6) short; 7) many; 8) lacrimal sac

2. *Compose one-word terms with the dictionary form with the following meaning:*

1) specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; 2) results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; 3) any kind of pain affecting a joint; 4) any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; 5) the origin and development of bone marrow; 6) a person with an unusually small size of head; 7) acute inflammation of the gray mater of the brain; 8) calculus on the teeth

3. *Write down the Latin dictionary form and give the full definition of the following terms in English:*

1) iatrogenic; 2) psychiatrist; 3) apnea; 4) phlebography; 5) erythema; 6) megaduodenum; 7) galactostasis; 8) typhlocele

4. Give the dictionary form of each word and the full definition of italicized words; translate into Latin the multiword terms:

1) acquired immune deficiency *syndrome*; 2) secondary *glaucoma*; 3) *replantation* of the left hand; 4) partial *ophthalmoplegy*; 5) chemical burn of the oesophagus; 6) *dropsy* of the gall bladder; 7) monostotic fibrous *dysplasia*; 8) benign lymphocytic *meningitis*

## Latin-english vocabulary

### A

**abdōmen, ĩnis n** abdomen

**abscessus, us m** an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration, abscess

**achlorhydria, ae f** complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria

**acūtus, a, um** acute

**adenalgia, ae f** a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia

**adenasthenia, ae f** functional deficiency in a gland, adenasthenia

**adenocarcinōma, ātis n**

a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

**aërobion, i n** a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen during growth, aerobe, aerobion

**aetiologĭcus, a, um** aetiologic, based on the aetiology — the science of the investigation of the cause or origin

**aliēnus, a, um** foreign

**allergĭcus, a, um** allergic

**alopecia, ae f** loss of hair, alopecia

**amenorrhoea, ae f** the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea

**amnesia, ae f** loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia

**anaërobion, i n** a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply being deprived of either free oxygen or air, anaerobe

**anaesthesiolōgus, i m** a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anaesthesiologist

**angiopathia, ae f** any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy

**anthropogēnus, a, um** caused by human activities

**anthropologia, ae f** anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution

**anthropolōgus, i m** anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution

**apodia, ae f** congenital absence of feet, apodia

**arteria, ae f** artery

**arthromalacia, ae f** softening of the joints, arthromalacia

**asthenia, ae f** loss of vital forces, asthenia

**autohaemotherapia, ae f** a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy

**autopepsia, ae f** the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia

**avulsio, ōnis f** the forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure, avulsion

### B

**bacteriālis, e** bacterial, originating or derived from, belonging to or consisting of bacteria

**benignus, a, um** benign

**biologia, ae f** biology, science  
studying forms of life and living  
organisms

**blepharītis, itīdis f** inflammation  
of the eyelids, blepharitis

**blepharoplastīca, ae f** a plastic  
operation to restore an eyelid

**brachycephālus, i m** an individual  
with disproportionately short head,  
brachycephalic

**brachydactylia, ae f** a condition in  
which there are abnormally short  
fingers or toes, brachydactylia

**bradyphagia, ae f** slowing of  
swallowing, bradyphagia

**bradypnoë, ës f** an abnormally slow  
rate of breathing, bradypnoea

**broncholithiāsīs, is f** the condition in  
which calculi occur in the lumen of  
bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

## C

**cadāver, ěris n** a corpse; a lifeless  
human body

**calcūlus, i m** a solid pathological  
concretion, usually of inorganic  
matter, formed in any part of  
the body, calculus

**carcinōma, ātis n** a malignant  
epithelial tumor, carcinoma

**carcinomatōsis, is f** the condition  
in which carcinoma is widely  
distributed throughout the body,  
carcinomatosis

**cardiogēnus, a, um** cardiogenic,  
arising because of the heart

**cardiolōgus, i m** a specialist treating  
heart diseases, cardiologist

**cerēbrum, i n** cerebrum

**cervix, icis f** cervix

**cholecystītis, itīdis f** inflammation  
of the gallbladder, cholecystitis

**chondropathia, ae f** any disease  
affecting a cartilage, chondropathy

**chronīcus, a, um** chronic, long  
continued

**chylothōrax, ācis m** the condition  
in which there is an effusion of  
the lymph into the thoracic cavity,  
chylothorax

**colpotomia, ae f** any cutting  
operation on the vagina,  
colpotomy

**combustio, ōnis f** burn, an injury  
caused by heat or by chemical  
or physical agents having  
an effect similar to heat

**commotio, ōnis f** a concussion or  
a violent shaking of a structure

**congelatio, ōnis f** congelation,  
frostbite, a local morbid condition  
caused by freezing

**congenītus, a, um** congenital

**continuus, a, um** continued

**cor, cordis n** heart

**cornea, ae f** cornea

**corpus, ōris n** body

**craniometria, ae f** measurement  
of the skull, craniometry

**cryochirurgia, ae f** surgical  
procedures in which tissue is  
destroyed by freezing, cryosurgery

**cryotherapia, ae f** the science  
of the use of cold as a therapeutic  
measure, cryotherapy

**cryptophthalmia, ae f** congenital  
adhesion of the eyelids so that  
the eyeballs can not be seen,  
cryptophthalmia

**cystorrhagia, ae f** haemorrhage from  
the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia

**cystoschīsis, is f** a congenital fissure  
of urinary bladder, cystoschisis



## D

- dacryostenōsis, is f** narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
- dactylospasmus, ae f** spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm
- decapsulatio, ōnis f** surgical removal of a capsule or sheath, decapsulation
- deformans, ntis** deforming
- dermatomycōsis, is f** a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi
- dermatōsis, is f** any disease of the skin, dermatosis
- descensus, us m** the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, descent
- desmorrhēxis, is f** rupture of a ligament, desmorrhēxis
- desmurgia, ae f** the science of applying ligatures or bandages to a part, desmurgy
- dexter, tra, trum** right
- diabētes, ae m** anyone of a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism, diabetes
- diabētīcus, a, um** diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes
- diagnōsis, is f** medical denotation of the disease from which a person suffers, diagnosis
- digītus, i m** finger, toe
- disarticulatio, ōnis f** separation or amputation in a joint, without cutting through bone, disarticulation
- dolichocephalia, ae f** the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia

**duodēnum, i n** duodenum

**dysgeusia, ae f** impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia

**dysthyreōsis, is f** imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

## E

**ectopia, ae f** a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part, ectopia

**embryologia, ae f** the branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extrauterine life, embryology

**embryotomia, ae f** dissection of an embryo or fetus, embryotomy

**empyēma, ātis n** a collection of pus in a cavity, empyema

**encephalogramma, ātis n** any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram

**enterocolītis, itīdis f** an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis

**erosio, ōnis f** any superficial destructive process, erosion

**erythropenia, ae f** a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia

**evisceratio, ōnis f** removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration

**extractio, ōnis f** the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body, extraction

## F

**faciālis**, e facial  
**facies**, ēi f face  
**febris**, is f fever  
**fetor**, ōris m a foul odour or stench,  
fetor

## G

**galactorrhoea**, ae f an excessive  
flow of milk, galactorrhoea  
**gaster**, tris f stomach  
**gastrocēle**, es f hernia of the stomach  
or of a portion which has become  
pouched, gastrocele  
**gastrorrhoea**, ae f the secretion  
by the stomach of an abnormally  
large quantity of gastric juice or  
of mucus, gastrorrhoea  
**gastrospasmus**, i m an involuntary  
contraction of the stomach muscle,  
gastrospasm  
**gastrostōma**, ātis n natural  
or artificial gastric fistula,  
gastrostoma  
**geriāter**, tri m a specialist treating  
diseases of the aged, geriatrician  
**glandūla**, ae f gland  
**gingivālis**, e gingival  
**glossoplegia**, ae f paralysis of  
the tongue, glossoplegia  
**glycaemia**, ae f a condition in which  
the circulating blood contains  
a quantity of sugar above normal  
amounts, glycaemia  
**granulōma**, ātis n a tumour  
composed of granulation tissue,  
granuloma  
**gravīda**, ae f a woman who  
is pregnant, gravida  
**gynaecolōgus**, i m a specialist  
for treatment genital diseases  
in women, gynecologist

## H

**haemarthrōsis**, sis f extravasation  
of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis  
**haematologia**, ae f branch  
of medicine studying blood and  
its diseases, hematology  
**halitōsis**, is f fetid or offensive  
breath, halitosis  
**hemianopsia**, ae f (=hemianopia,  
ae f) loss of half the vision in each  
eye, hemianopsia (hemianopia)  
**hemicrania**, ae f a periodic morbid  
condition with localized  
headaches, hemicrania  
**hemiplegia**, ae f paralysis of one half  
of the body, hemiplegia  
**hepar**, ātis n liver  
**herpes**, ētis m inflammation of  
the skin or mucous membrane,  
with clusters of deep-seated  
vesicles, herpes  
**hidradenītis**, itīdis f inflammation  
of the sweat glands, hidradenitis  
**histolýsis**, is f spontaneous  
dissolution of living organic tissue,  
histolysis  
**hydromētra**, ae f an accumulation  
of watery fluid in the cavity of  
the uterus, hydrometra  
**hyperaemia**, ae f an excess of blood  
in any part of the body,  
hyperaemia  
**hyperkeratōsis**, is f hypertrophy  
of the stratum corneum of  
the skin, hyperkeratosis  
**hyperthermia**, ae f very high body  
temperature, hyperthermia  
**hypochyilia**, ae f a condition in which  
the amount of gastric juice is  
lessened, hypochyilia  
**hyposalivatio**, ōnis f a condition in  
which there is abnormal decrease

in the secretion of saliva,  
hyposalivation

**hypotonia, ae f** lessened tension in  
any body structure, hypotonia

## I

**iatrogēnus, a, um** happening  
because of the physician's manner  
or injudicious remarks, iatrogenic

**implantatio, ōnis f** the introduction  
of one tissue or structure into  
another with the aim of improving  
the function of any part of  
the body, implantation

**implantātum, i n** implant, any piece  
of tissue for use as a graft

**indigestio, ōnis f** any disturbance  
of the normal process of digestion,  
indigestion

**infarctus, us m** a wedge-shaped  
area of dead tissue, with or without  
haemorrhage, produced by  
the obstruction of an end artery,  
infarct, infarction

**infectio, ōnis f** the invasion of  
a pathogenic organism into  
the body and its subsequent  
multiplication, infection

**inflammatio, ōnis f** inflammation

**insufficiētia, ae f** the state of being  
inadequate to perform normal  
function, insufficiency

**intestīnum, i n** intestine

**inversus, a, um** inverse

**iris, ĩdis f** iris

## K

**keratotomia, ae f** making an incision  
into the cornea, keratotomy

## L

**labiālis, e** labial

**laparogastrostomia, ae f**

the operation to create an artificial  
opening in the stomach,  
laparogastrostomy

**laparoscopia, ae f** the act or process  
of examining the peritoneal cavity  
and its contents by means of  
a laparoscope, laparoscopy

**larynx, yngis m** larynx

**latens, ntis** hidden

**leucocytōsis, is f** an increase in  
the total number of leucocytes  
in the blood, leucocytosis

**ligamentum, i n** ligament

**lipuria, ae f** the presence of an oily  
emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria

**lumbālis, e** lumbal

**lymphangiōma, ātis n** a tumor  
formed of lymphatic tissue,  
lymphangioma

**lymphostāsis, is f** cessation of  
the flow of lymph, lymphostasis

## M

**maculōsus, a, um** maculate, marked  
by maculae

**mastogramma, ātis n** result of breast  
X-ray examination, mastogram

**megacōlon, i n** a condition in which  
there is great dilatation of the large  
intestine, megacolon

**melanoderma, ātis n** a condition  
in which there is an unusually  
large accumulation of melanin  
in the skin, melanoderma

**melanōsis, is f** an abnormal  
deposition of the black pigment  
(melanin) in the skin or other  
tissues, melanosis

**mellītus, a, um (diabētes)** mellitus  
(diabetes) characterized by a high-  
fasting blood sugar

**menalgia, ae f** painful menstruation, menalgia

**meningiōma, ātis n** a meningeal tumor, thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma

**mesentericus, a, um** mesenteric

**metamorphōsis, is f** change of form or structure, metamorphosis

**microgenia, ae f** a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia

**micromyelia, ae f** general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia

**micronychia, ae f** small nail or nails, micronychia

**monodactylismus, i m** a congenital condition in which one finger or toe only is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism

**morbis, i m** disease

**myasthenia, ae f** weakness of muscles from whatever cause, myasthenia

**myelitis, itīdis f** inflammation of bone marrow, myelitis

**myocēle, es f** hernia of a muscle, myocele

**myoplegia, ae f** paralysis of muscle or a condition in which is decreased muscular force, myoplegia

## N

**necropneumonia, ae f** gangrene of the lung, necropneumonia

**neonātus, a, um s** newly born child

**neoplasma, ātis n** any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm

**nephrolithiāsis, is f** a condition characterized by the presence of

gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

**nervus, i m** nerve

**neuralgia, ae f** a painful affection of the nerves, due to functional disturbances or to neuritis, neuralgia

**neuritis, itīdis f** inflammation of a nerve, neuritis

**neuropatholōgus, i m** a specialist treating diseases of nervous system, neuropathologist

## O

**occipitālis, e** occipital

**ocūlus, i m** eye

**odontolīthus, i m** calculus on the teeth, odontolith

**odontogenēsis, is f** the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis

**oligocytaemia, ae f** a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia

**oligophrenia, ae f** congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia

**oncolōgus, i m** a specialist treating tumors, oncologist

**onychomycōsis, is f** infection of nails caused by a fungus, onychomycosis

**ophthalmoscopia, ae f** instrumental-visual examination of the eye, ophthalmoscopy

**os, oris n** mouth

**osteitis, itīdis f** inflammation of bone due to infection or injury, osteitis

**osteōma, ātis n** an innocent tumor of bone, osteoma

**osteomalacia, ae f** softening of the bones, osteomalacia

**osteonecrōsis, is f** death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis  
**osteopathia, ae f** disease of bones, osteopathia  
**osteoporōsis, is f** rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis  
**otorhinolaryngologia, ae f** branch of medicine for treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx, otorhinolaryngology

## P

**pachydactylia, ae f** abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly  
**palatoplegia, ae f** paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia  
**palpatio, ōnis f** the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs, palpation  
**pantalgia, ae f** pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia  
**partialis, e** partiāl  
**percussio, ōnis f** the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed, percussion  
**perfōrans, ntis** perforating  
**pes, pedis m** leg  
**phlebocarcinōma, ātis n** a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein, phlebocarcinōma  
**photophobia, ae f** abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia  
**phrenīcus, a, um** phrenic

**phthisiāter, tri m** a specialist treating tuberculosis, phthiisiotherapist  
**physiologia, ae f** science studying normal vital processes in human body, physiology  
**phytotherapia, ae f** method of treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy  
**planus, a, um** plane  
**pneumocentēsis, is f** lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of a cavity, pneumocentesis  
**pneumoēmpyēma, ātis n** the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space, pneumoempyema  
**poliomyelītis, itīdis f** an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal cord due to polioviruses, poliomyelitis  
**polymastia, ae f** the state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia  
**polypus, i m** a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface, polyp  
**polyuria, ae f** increase in the amount of the excreted urine, polyuria  
**proctolōgus, i m** a specialist treating diseases of rectum, proctologist  
**prognathia, ae f** a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognatism  
**prolapsus, us m** the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, prolapse  
**prophylaxis, is f** the art of preventing disease, prophylaxis  
**pseudoarthrōsis, is f** a false joint formed between the fragments of

a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudarthrosis

**psychiatria, ae f** branch of medicine treating mental diseases, psychiatry

**psychōsis, is f** any kind of mental disorder, psychosis

**puerperalis, e** puerperal

**punctio, ōnis f** the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it, puncture

**pyelītis, itīdis f** inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney, pyelitis

**pyogēnus, a, um** forming or producing pus, pyogenic

**pyopneumothōrax, ācis m** an inflammatory condition characterized by the presence of purulent fluid and gas in a pleural cavity, pyopneumothorax

**pyosalpinx, ngis f** inflammation of the uterine tube which has progressed to pus formation, pyosalpinx

## R

**rectum, i n** rectum

**renālis, e** renal

**replantatio, ōnis f** the plantation of a removed part of the whole again, replantation

**resectio, ōnis f** surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, colon etc., resection

**rhinogramma, ātis n** X-ray film of the nose, rhinogram

**ruptūra, ae f** the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure, rupture

## S

**salpingectomy, ae f** excision of a uterine tube, salpingectomy

**salpingolysis, is f** breaking-down of adhesions in a uterine tube, salpingolysis

**sarcōma, ātis n** a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma

**sclerōma, ātis n** an area of indurated tissue, particularly in the mucous membrane of the nose or larynx, scleroma

**sectio, ōnis f** the act of cutting, section

**sectio cadavēris** a post-mortem examination of dead body

**senīlis, e** senile

**simplex, icis** simple

**situs, us m** position, site

**sive** or

**somatologia, ae f** branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body, somatology

**spasmophilia, ae f** a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and spasm, spasmophilia

**spasmus, i m** a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of muscle, spasm

**sphygmogramma, ātis n** a record of the arterial pulse waves, sphygmogram

**splanchnosclerōsis, is f** hardening of any viscus, splanchnosclerosis

**splenomegalia, ae f** enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia

**spondylītis, itīdis f** inflammation of the spine, spondylitis

**spondylodēsis, is f** the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone graft, spondylodesis

**spongiōsus, a, um** spongy (spongiuous), full of small holes, like a sponge

**stenothōrax, ācis m** a short, narrow thorax or chest, stenothorax

**stomatomycōsis, is f** any morbid condition of the oral cavity caused by a microscopical fungus, stomatomyosis

**stomatoscopia, ae f** visual-instrumental examination of the oral cavity, stomatoscopy

**syndrōmum, i n** a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease, syndrome

## T

**tachycardia, ae f** rapid action of the heart, tachycardia

**tenorrhaphia, ae f** an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon, tenorrhaphy

**tenotomia, ae f** the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy

**thermālis, e** thermal

**thermotherapia, ae f** the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapia

**thoracocentēsis, is f** a puncture of the wall of the thorax with the aim of any diagnostic, thoracocentesis

**thrombocytopoēsis, is f** the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopoiesis

**thrombotīcus, a, um** characterized or caused by thrombosis, thrombotic

**thyroideus, a, um** thyroid

**thyr(e)otoxicōsis, is f** any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis

**toponeurōsis, is f** localized neurosis, a functional derangement in any part of the body, toponeurosis

**toxicomania, ae f** an insane desire for poison, toxicomania

**toxicōsis, is f** the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison, toxicosis

**transplantātum, i n** a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another, transplant

**traumatīcus, a, um** traumatic

**typhlectasia, ae f** dilatation of the caecum, typhlectasia

## U

**ulcus, ěris n** ulcer

**unguis, is m** nail

**uraemia, ae f** the condition which is associated with the retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter, uraemia

**uranoschīsis, is f** cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate, uranoschisis

**utērus, i m** uterus

## V

**venōsus, a, um** venous

**verrūca, ae f** wart

**verus, a, um** true

**viscus, ěris n** the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities: pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

**vitium, i n** a defect or a vice, vitium

## **X**

**xanthopsia, ae f** a disturbance of color vision, when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia

**xanthōsis, is f** yellowish discoloration, especially of the skin, xanthosis

**xerophthalmia, ae f** a morbid condition of eyes characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (=xeroma)

Репозиторий БГМУ



## English-latin vocabulary

### A

**an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon**

dolichocōlon, i n

**abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea** tachypnoë, ës f

**abnormal narrowing of the mouth, stenostomy** stenostomia, ae f

**abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel, angiostenosis** angiostenōsis, is f

**abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia** tachyphagia, ae f

**abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia** hypopepsia, ae f

**abnormal sluggishness of physical movement, bradykinesia** bradykinesia, ae f

**abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly** pachydactylia, ae f

**an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium** pyopericardium, i n

**achylia, absence of acid and pepsin from the gastric juice** achylia, ae f

**acquired** acquisītus, a, um

**the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction** extractio, ōnis f

**acute** acūtus, a, um

**acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain, polioencephalitis** polioencephalītis, itīdis f

**adenoma of the eyelid, blepharoadenoma**

blepharoadenōma, ātis n

**adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body** adiponecrōsis, is f

**aerobe, a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen** aërobion, i n

**aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen in order to live** aërobīcus, a, um

**aglossia, the congenital condition of being without a tongue** aglossia, ae f

**alimentary** alimentarius, a, um

**allergic** allergīcus, a, um

**amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage** amputatio, ōnis f

**anaemia, changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood** anaemia, ae f

**anaerobe, a microorganism which is able to exist although deprived of free oxygen or air** anaërobion, i n

**anaerobic, able to sustain life without free oxygen** anaërobīcus, a, um

**angiology, the science of the blood vessels** angiologia, ae f

**angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels** angiōma, ātis, n

**anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in**

**the process of his evolution**  
anthropolōgus, i m

**aortic** aorticus, a, um

**apn(o)ea, the cessation in breathing**  
apnoë, ës f

**arthrocentesis, the surgical procedure of puncturing a joint**  
arthrocentēsis, is f

**arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint** arthralgia, ae f

**atrachia, not having hair** atrichia, ae f

**atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause**  
atrophia, ae f

**atypical** atypicus, a, um

**autolaryngoscopy, the examination of one's own larynx with a laryngoscope** autolaryngoscopia, ae f

**autoplasty, the repair of a diseased or injured tissue or organ by material taken from another part of the body** autoplastica, ae f

**autopsy, post-mortem examination of a body in order to establish the cause of death** autopsia, ae f

## B

**benign** benignus, a, um

**biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances**  
biopharmaceutica, ae f

**biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of tissue cut from the living body** biopsia, ae f

**blepharotomy, incision of an eyelid** blepharotomia, ae f

**brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus**  
brachyoesophāgus, i m

**bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate** bradycardia, ae f

**branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases, proctology** proctologia, ae f

**branch of medicine treating diseases of children, paediatrics** paediatra, ae f

**breast** mamma, ae f

**bronchitis, an inflamed condition of the bronchi**  
bronchītis, itīdis f

**burn** combustio, ōnis f

## C

**calculosis, the condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body** calculōsis, is f

**calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion** calcūlus, i m

**calculus on the teeth, odontolith** odontolīthus, i m

**cancerogenic (=carcinogenic), producing carcinoma** cancerogēnus, a, um

**carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor** carcinōma, ātis n

**a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondroma** chondrōma, ātis n

**a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma** adenocarcinōma, ātis n

**cardinal** cardinālis, e

**cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart;**

**2) graphical picture of heart work**  
 cardiogramma, ātis n  
**cardiography 1) X-ray examination**  
**of the heart; 2) graphical**  
**recording of heart activity**  
 cardiographia, ae f  
**causing the growth of tumors,**  
**oncogenous** oncogēnus, a, um  
**cephalalgia, pain in the head**  
 cephalalgia, ae f  
**cerebral** cerebrālis, e  
**cerebrospinal** cerebrospinālis, e  
**changes in the red cells resulting**  
**in a reduction in the total**  
**amount of blood** anaemia, ae f  
**chemical** chemīcus, a, um  
**cholecystolithiasis, the condition**  
**in which there are gallstones**  
**in the gall bladder or bile duct**  
 cholecystolithiāsis, is f  
**chondroporosis, a porous condition**  
**of cartilage shown in thinning of**  
**cartilage and formation of spaces**  
**and sinuses** chondroporōsis, is f  
**chronic** chronīcus, a, um  
**a chronic disease of the skin,**  
**characterized by the appearance**  
**of laminated scales, psoriasis**  
 psoriāsis, is f  
**chyluria, the condition in which**  
**the urine contains lymph**  
 chyluria, ae f  
**closed** clausus, a, um  
**collapse, a state of extreme weakness**  
**with physical and mental**  
**depression** collapsus, us m  
**colonorrhagia, haemorrhage from**  
**the colon** colonorrhagia, ae f  
**colpocystotomy, surgical incision into**  
**the urinary bladder through**  
**the wall of the vagina**  
 colpocystotomia, ae f  
**colpohysteropexy, the operative**  
**fixation of the uterus through**  
**the vagina** colpohysteropexia,  
 ae f  
**colpomyomectomy, removal**  
**of a myoma from the uterus**  
**by the vaginal route**  
 colpomyomectomia, ae f  
**coma, the state of complete loss**  
**of consciousness from which**  
**the patient cannot be roused**  
**by any ordinary external**  
**stimulus** coma, ātis n  
**composite** compositus, a, um  
**a concussion or a violent**  
**shaking of a soft structure**  
 commotio, ōnis f  
**a condition characterized by**  
**the presence of gravel or of**  
**renal calculi, nephrolithiasis**  
 nephrolithiāsis, is f  
**a condition in which the ability**  
**to swallow is lacking, aphagia**  
 aphagia  
**a condition in which the amount**  
**of gastric juice is lessened,**  
**hypochylia** hypochylia, ae f  
**a condition in which there are**  
**abnormally short fingers**  
**or toes, brachydactylia**  
 brachydactylia, ae f  
**a condition of enlargement**  
**of the liver, hepatomegalia**  
 hepatomegalia, ae f  
**congelation, frostbite, a local**  
**morbid condition caused by**  
**freezing** congelatio, ōnis f  
**congenital cleft of a vertebral**  
**arch or several arches,**  
**spondyloschisis**  
 spondyloschīsis, is f

**congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis** cystosch̄isis, is f  
**cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing** cryochirurgia, ae f  
**cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt** cryptol̄ithus, i m  
**cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis** cryptopsorīasis, is f  
**cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder** cyst̄itis, it̄idis f  
**cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells** cytologia, ae f

## D

**dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears** dacryorrhoea, ae f  
**deficiency** deficientia, ae f  
**dermatitis, inflammation of the skin** dermat̄itis, it̄idis f  
**desmalgia, pain in a ligament** desmalgia, ae f  
**desmotomy, incision of the ligament** desmotomia, ae f  
**diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics** iridodiagnost̄ica, ae f  
**didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or two toes on a foot** didactylismus, i m  
**diffuse** diff̄usus, a, um  
**dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia** gastrectasia, ae f  
**direct** directus, a, um  
**a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea** pyorrhoea, ae f  
**any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy** arthropathia, ae f

**any diseased condition of the viscera, splanchnopathy** splanchnopathia, ae f  
**any disease of skin, dermatosis** dermatosis, is f  
**a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia** xanthopsia, ae f  
**dislocation, abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint** dislocatio, ōnis f  
**dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter** dolichocōlon, i n  
**dropsy, the abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissue or cavity space** hydrops, ōpis m  
**dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in the back and lower abdomen at or about the time of the menses** dysmenorrhoea, ae f  
**dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue** dysplasia, ae f  
**dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity** dystonia, ae f  
**dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition** dystrophia, ae f

## E

**ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part** ectopia, ae f

**eczema, a non-contagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching and burning** eczēma, ātis n

**embolaemia, a condition in which emboli are present in the blood** embolaemia, ae f

**embryectomy, the surgical removal of the embryo** embryectomia, ae f

**embryopathology, the branch of pathology concerned with defective or abnormal development of embryo** embryopathologia, ae f

**emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated** emphysēma, ātis n

**encephalomalacia, softening of the brain** encephalomalacia, ae f

**encephalopathy, any morbid condition of the brain** encephalopathia, ae f

**endogenous, having origin within the organism** endogēnus, a, um

**endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus** endometrītis, itīdis f

**enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit** enophthalmus, i m

**enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestine** enterītis, itīdis f

**enterogastritis, inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach** enterogastrītis, itīdis f

**enterolithiasis, the formation of calculi or concretions in the intestine** enterolithiāsis, is f

**enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine** enteromegalia, ae f

**the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion** invasio, ōnis f

**erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia** erythēma, ātis n

**evisceration, a removal of the contents of an organ or part** evisceratio, ōnis f

**an excessive flow of milk, galactorroea** galactorroea, ae f

**excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia** hyperaesthesia, ae f

**exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism** exogēnus, a, um

**eye** oculus, i m

## F

**fetal** fetālis, e

**femur** femur, ōris n

**fever** febris, is f

**fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue** fibrōma, ātis n

**fibrous** fibrōsus, a, um

**any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin, transudate** transsudātum, i n

**the formation of concretions, lithiasis** lithiāsis, is f

**fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone** fractūra, ae f

**functional** functionālis, e

## G

**galactostasis, arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk**

galactostāsis, is f

**gall bladder** vesīca fellea (biliāris)

**geminated** geminātus, a, um

**gerontology, science studying living processes in the aged** gerontologia, ae f

**gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness** gigantismus, i m

**glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences** glaucōma, ātis n

**glossitis, inflammation of the tongue** glossītis, itīdis f

**gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws** gnathalgia, ae f

**gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla** gnathoschīsis, is f

**goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland** struma, ae f

## H

**haematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases** haematologia, ae f

**haematoma, a tumor or swelling composed of blood** haematōma, ātis n

**haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord** haematomyelia, ae f

**haematosalpinx, collection and retention of blood in a uterine tube** haematosalpinx, ngis f

**haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood** haemogramma, ātis n

**haemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males**

**and transmitted by females** haemophilia, ae f

**hand** manus, us f

**hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis** osteosclerōsis, is f

**headache** dolor (ōris m) capītis

**hemiatrophy, atrophy only affecting one half of the body, or one half of an organ** hemiatrophia, ae f

**hepatic** hepāticus, a, um

**hepatitis, inflammation of the liver** hepatītis, itīdis f

**hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver** hepatomegalia, ae f

**hereditary** hereditarius, a, um

**herniation of the uterus, metrocele** metrocēle, es f

**hidrosis 1) the process of secreting sweat; 2) abnormally profuse sweating** hydrōsis, is f

**hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint** hydrarthrōsis, is f

**hydrometra, an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus** hydromētra, ae f

**hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body** hyperaesthesia, ae f

**hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood** hyperglycaemia, ae f

**hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva** hypersalivatio, ōnis f

**hypertension, high arterial blood pressure** hypertensio, ōnis f

**hypogalactia, the secretion of too small quantity of milk**  
hypogalactia, ae f

**hypoglycaemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about hypoglycaemia, a low blood sugar concentration** hypoglycaemicus, a, um

**hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory** hypomnesia, ae f

**hypophrenia, feebleness of mind**  
hypophrenia, ae f

**hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part** hypoplasia, ae f

**hypothermia, deficiency of body heat**  
hypothermia, ae f

## I

**iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks,** iatrogenus, a, um

**immune** immūnus, a, um

**immunodeficiency** immunodeficientia, ae f

**impairment of the voice, dysphonia**  
dysphonia, ae f

**implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft** implantātum, i n

**implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body** implantatio, ōnis f

**incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysteroectomy**  
laparohysteroectomy, ae f

**an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis**  
leucocytōsis, is f

**infective** infectīvus, a, um

**inflammation** inflammation, ōnis f

~ **of the cornea, keratitis**  
keratītis, itīdis f

~ **affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder, pyelocystitis**  
pyelocystītis, itīdis f

~ **in the nail fold, panaris**  
panaritium, i n

~ **of the abdominal muscles, laparomyositis** laparomyosītis, itīdis f

~ **of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis** endometrītis, itīdis f

~ **of the liver, hepatitis** hepatītis, itīdis f

~ **of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord, meningitis**  
meningitis, itīdis f

**injury** laesio, ōnis f

**intermittent, coming and going at intervals** intermittens, ntis

**internal** internus, a, um

**intravenous** intravenōsus, a, um

**iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via examination of iris**  
iridodiagnostica, ae f

## J

**joint** articulatio, ōnis f

## K

**keratomycosis, disease of cornea caused by a fungus**  
keratomycōsis, is f

**keratoplasty, plastic surgery of the cornea** keratoplastica, ae f

**any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia** arthralgia, ae f

## L

**left** sinister, tra, trum

**lung** pulmo, ōnis m

**lymphangiitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels** lymphangiītis, itīdis f

**lymphocytic** lymphocytīcus, a, um

**lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes** lymphocytōsis, is f

## M

**macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal** macrocŷtus, i m

**macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails** macronychia, ae f

**mammogram (=mastogram) result of breast X-ray examination,** mammogramma. ātis n

**a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma** sarcōma, ātis n

**mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland** mastopathia, ae f

**measurement the size of pelvis in women, pelvimetry** pelvimetria, ae f

**a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, neurosurgeon** neurochirurgus, i m

**megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size** megaloduodēnum, i n

**megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on** megalomania, ae f

**melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor**

melanocarcinōma, ātis n

**a meningeal tumor thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma** meningiōma, ātis n

**menalgia, painful menstruation** menalgia, ae f

**meningitis, inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord** meningītis, itīdis f

**meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges** meningoencephalītis, itīdis f

**metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity** metastāsis, is f

**micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands** micromastia, ae f

**microsphygmy, diminished strength of pulse** microsphygmia, ae f

**monocytopoiesis, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow** monocytopoēsis, is f

**monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease** monopathophobia, ae f

**monostotic, pertaining to a single bone** monostotīcus, a, um

**any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy** pneumopathia, ae f



**any morbid condition of the nose,**  
rhinopathy rhinopathia, ae f  
**any morbid condition or abnormal  
growth of the hair, trichopathy**  
trichopathia, ae f  
**myelocyaemia, the presence  
of myelocytes in the blood**  
myelocyaemia, ae f  
**myopia, short sight** myopia, ae f

## N

**narcosis, stupor produced by drugs  
and tending to insensibility and  
paralysis** narcōsis, is f  
**narrowing or stricture of the duct of  
the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis**  
dacryostenōsis, is f  
**necraemia, a condition in which  
the blood loses its vitality**  
necraemia, ae f  
**nearthrosis, an artificial joint  
implanted by the surgical  
operation** nearthrōsis, is f  
**a neoplasm originating in embryonic  
elements or blighted ovum,  
embryoneoplasm**  
embryoneoplasma, ātis n  
**nephrogenic, produced by  
or originating in a kidney**  
nephrogēnus, a um  
**nephropathy, disease of the kidney**  
nephropathia, ae f  
**neurogenic, happening because of  
the nervous system** neurogēnus,  
a, um

## O

**odontogenic, relating to  
the development of the teeth**  
odontogēnus, a, um  
**odontome, a solid or cystic tumour  
occurring in the jaws which is**

**derived from cells conserved  
in tooth development**  
odontōma, ātis n  
**oedema, the presence of  
excessive amounts of fluid in  
the intercellular tissue spaces  
of the body** oedēma, ātis n  
**oesophagostenosis, narrowing  
of the oesophagus**  
oesophagostenōsis, is f  
**oesophagostoma, any opening  
into the oesophagus apart  
from the normal entrance and  
exit** oesophagostōma, ātis n  
**oesophagus** oesophāgus, i m  
**oligodactylia, a congenital  
deficiency of fingers, or toes**  
oligodactylia, ae f  
**oncologist, a specialist treating  
tumorous diseases** oncolōgus,  
i m  
**oncotherapy, the treatment of  
tumours** oncotherapia, ae f  
**onychodystrophy, malformation  
of the nails due to impaired  
nutrition** onychodystrophia,  
ae f  
**open** apertus, a, um  
**operation** operatio, ōnis f  
**the operation for the relief  
of hernia and the resultant  
reduction of the latter,  
herniotomia** herniotomia, ae f  
**the operation of removal of  
the adenoid growth by  
excision, adenotomy**  
adenotomia, ae f  
**the operation of transference  
of a tissue of an organ from  
one place to an other with  
the aim of improving  
or renewing a function,**

**transplantation** transplantatio, ōnis f  
**ophthalmoplegy, palsy (paralysis) of the ocular muscles** ophthalmoplegia, ae f  
**ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the eyeball** ophthalmorrhexis, is f  
**ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye** ophthalmoscopia, ae f  
**the origin and development of bone marrow, myelogenesis** myelogenēsis, is f  
**the origin and development of morbid condition,**  
**pathogenesis** pathogenēsis, is f  
**the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis** histogenēsis, is f  
**osteochondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues** osteochondrōsis, is f  
**osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition** osteodystrophia, ae f  
**osteomalacia, softening of the bones** osteomalacia, ae f  
**osteoporosis, rarefaction of bone** osteoporōsis, is f  
**otogenic, happening because of the ear** otogēnus, a, um  
**otolaryngologist, a specialist treating ear and larynx diseases** otolaryngolōgus, i m

## P

**pachycheilia, abnormal thickness or swelling of the lips** pachycheilia, ae f  
**panaris, inflammation in the nail fold** panaritium, i n  
**paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia** palatoplegia, ae f

**paralysis, loss of motor strength due to a functional or organic disorder of neural or neuromuscular mechanism** paralýsis, is f  
**paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia** diplegia, ae f  
**paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue adjacent to the kidney** paranephritīs, itīdis f  
**partial** partiālis, e  
**a pathological condition in which one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is only affected, monoplegia** monoplegia, ae f  
**a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy** polyarthropathia, ae f  
**pathological softening of cartilage, chondromalacia** chondromalacia, ae f  
**pediatrician, a specialist treating children's diseases** paediāter, tri m  
**peduncle** peduncūlus, i m  
**pelvic** pelvīcus, a, um  
**pericystitis, inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected** pericystītis, itīdis f  
**a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus** microcephālus, i m  
**pharmacophobia, morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines** pharmacophobia, ae f

**pharmacotherapia, science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy**  
 pharmacotherapia, ae f

**phlebography 1) radiographic visualization of veins; 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph**  
 phlebographia, ae f

**phoniatics (=phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech**  
 phoniatria, ae f

**phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart sounds**  
 phonocardiogramma, ātis n

**photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light**  
 photophobia, ae f

**phthisiologist, a specialist treating tuberculosis**  
 phthisiāter, tri m

**phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs**  
 phytotherapia, ae f

**plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which the blood corpuscles are suspended**  
 plasma, ātis n

**any plastic operation for repair or reconstruction of the urinary bladder, cystoplasty**  
 cystoplastīca, ae f

**any plastic surgical operation on the vagina, colpoplasty**  
 colpoplastīca, ae f

**pneumocentesis, lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity**  
 pneumocentēsis, is f

**pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space**  
 pneumoempyēma, ātis n

**pneumohaemothorax, an accumulation of gas, air and**

**blood in the cavity of the thorax**  
 pneumohaemothōrax, ācis m

**pneumonia, inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung**  
 pneumonia, ae f

**pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung**  
 pneumorrhaphia, ae f

**pneumotomy, the making of an incision into the lung**  
 pneumotomia, ae f

**podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid**  
 podāgra, ae f

**podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot**  
 podalgia, ae f

**polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of the brain**  
 polioencephalopathia, ae f

**polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins**  
 polyavitaminōsis, is f

**polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane**  
 polypōsis, is f

**polypus of the vagina, colpopolypus**  
 colpopolŷpus, i m

**postoperative**  
 postoperatīvus, a, um

**primary**  
 primarius, a, um

**proctodiagnosics, examination of the functional state of**

**the rectum** proctodiagnostīca, ae f  
**proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum**  
 proctoscopia, ae f  
**proctospasm, spasmodic contraction of the rectum** proctospasmus, i m  
**profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea**  
 rhinorrhoea, ae f  
**prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part**  
 prolapsus, us m  
**psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases** psychiāter, tri m  
**psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes**  
 psychogēnus, a, um  
**psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality** psycholōgus, i m  
**puncture of the cornea,**  
 keratocentesis keratocentēsis, is f  
**puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it** punctūra, ae f;  
 punctio, ōnis f  
**pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine** pyuria, ae f

## R

**a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte** macrocŷtus, i m  
**removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part,**  
 amputation amputatio, ōnis f  
**removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part,**  
 extirpation extirpatio, ōnis f  
**replantation, the plantation of a removed part of the whole to its site again** replantatio, ōnis f

**resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach, colon etc.** resectio, ōnis f  
**results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram**  
 haemogramma, ātis n  
**retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital or acquired genital canal stenosis, cryptomenorrhoea**  
 cryptomenorrhoea, ae f  
**retina** retina, ae f  
**rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose** rhinolīthus, i m  
**rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose**  
 rhinopathia, ae f  
**rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose**  
 rhinoscopia, ae f  
**rib** costa, ae f  
**right** dexter, tra, trum

## S

**salpingogram, the radiograph made during the radiographic visualization of the uterus and uterine tubes** salpingogramma, ātis n  
**salpingopexy, surgical fixation of the uterine tube**  
 salpingopexia, ae f  
**sarcomatosis, the condition in which a number of sarcomata develops here and there on the body** sarcomatōsis, is f  
**science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy**  
 pharmacotherapia, ae f

**scientist studying normal vital processes in human organism**  
 physiōlōgus, i m  
**sclerodermatitis, inflammation and induration of the skin**  
 sclerodermatītis, itīdis f  
**secondary** secundarius, a, um  
**senile** senīlis, e  
**separation of a tissue as a result of its death, necrolysis** necrolýsis, is f  
**sialolith, a salivary calculus**  
 sialolīthus, i m  
**simple** simplex, ĩcis  
**somatology, branch of anthropology studying structure of human body**  
 somatologia, ae f  
**spasm of the caecum, typhlospasm**  
 typhlospasmus, i m  
**specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms, biologist** biolōgus, i m  
**specialist studying the man in process of his evolution, anthropologist** anthropolōgus, i m  
**medical specialist treating ~ blood diseases, hematologist**  
 haematolōgus, i m  
**~ children's diseases, pediatrician**  
 paediāter, tri m  
**~ ear and larynx diseases, otolaryngologist,** otolaryngolōgus, i m  
**~ inner organs, therapist**  
 therapeutista, ae m  
**~ mental diseases, psychiatrist**  
 psychiāter, tri m  
**~ tumorous diseases, oncologist**  
 oncolōgus, i m  
**~ tuberculosis, phthisiologist**  
 phthisiāter, tri m  
**splenic** splēnicus, a, um  
**splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen**  
 splenohepatomegalia ae f  
**spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae** spondylopathia, ae f  
**spongiform, having resemblance a sponge** spongiformis, e  
**a state in which most of the teeth are lacking,**  
**oligodentia** oligodentia, ae f  
**a state in which there are too few erythrocytes,**  
**erythropenia** erythropenia, ae f  
**stenosis, narrowing or stricture of an orifice or of the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ**  
 stenōsis, is f  
**stomach** gaster, tris f  
**stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity** stomatologia, ae f  
**stomatītis, inflammation of the oral cavity,** stomatītis, itīdis f  
**subacute, (disease) running a moderately rapid and severe course for which the word acute would not be appropriate** subacūtus, a, um  
**subcutaneous** subcutaneus a, um  
**a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli, thromboembolism**  
 thromboēbolismus, i m  
**superficial** superficiālis, e  
**suppurative, pus-forming**  
 suppuratīvus, a, um  
**surgical operation on the small structures with the aid of**

**a microscope, microsurgery**  
microchirurgia, ae f

**symphepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball** symblepharon, i n

**symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function**  
symptōma, ātis n

**syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease**  
syndrōmum, i n

**synphalangism, a condition in which the joints of certain fingers or toes are fused** synphalangismus, i m

## T

**tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia** tachyphagia, ae f

**tendon** tendo, ĩnis m

**tenodesis, operative fixation of a tendon** tenodēsis, is f

**the presence of air or gas within a thorax, pneumothorax**  
pneumothōrax, ācis m

**the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum**  
haemotympānum, i n

**the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria** haematuria, ae f

**the production and evolution of form, morphogenesis**  
morphogenēsis, is f

**the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis** urolithiāsĭs, is f

**the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema** enanthēma, ātis n

**the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent**

**opening into the urinary bladder, cystostomy**  
cystostomia, se f

**therapist, specialist for treating diseases of inner organs** therapeutista, ae m

**thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax**  
thoracometria, ae f

**thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli** thromboēmbolismus, i m

**tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon from adhesions** tenolĭsis, is f

**thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life producing a thrombus**  
thrombōsis, is f

**tissue** textus, us m

**tomography, body-section radiography** tomographia, ae f

**tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil** tonsillĭtis, itĭdis f

**tonsillotomy, the surgical operation for removal of a part of a tonsil** tonsillotomia, ae f

**topography, the anatomical description of any particular part of the body** topographia, ae f

**topophobia, unreasoning fear of certain places** topophobia, ae f

**total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue, pneumonectomy**  
pneumonectomia, ae f

**toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by**

**the absorption of poisons** toxicōsis, is f

**transfusion, the introduction of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions into the blood vessels of the circulatory system** transfusio, ōnis f

**transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function** transplantation, ōnis f

**traumatic** traumāticus, a, um

**treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy** phytoterapia, ae f

**treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy** physiotherapia, ae f

**tuberculosis** tuberculōsis, is f

**a tumor consisting of connective tissue element, desmoneoplasm** desmoneoplasma, ātis n

**typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum** typhlocēle, es f

## U

**ulceration, the process of formation of an ulcer** ulceratio, ōnis f

**ultrasonic, ultrasound**

ultrasonarius, a, um

**urethritis, inflammation of**

**the urethra** urethrītis, itīdis f

**use of cold or freezing as**

**a therapeutic measure,**

**cryotherapy** cryotherapia, ae f

## V

**viral** virālis, e

## X

**xerostomia, dryness of**

**the mouth due to failure of**

**the salivary gland** xerostomia, ae f

**the X-ray examination of**

**the great vessels and**

**the chambers of the heart,**

**angiocardiology**

angiocardigraphia, ae f

**the X-ray examination of breast,**

**mammography**

mammographia, ae f

## W

**a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis**

hydrarthrōsis, is f

**wound** vulnus, ěris n

## THE INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS' ANTHEM "GAUDEAMUS"

**Gaudeāmus igītur,  
Juvēnes dum sumus!  
Post jucundam juventūtem,  
Post molestam senectūtem  
Nos habēbit humus. (bis)**

Let us rejoice therefore  
While we are young!  
After a pleasant youth,  
After a troubling old age  
The earth will have us.

Ubi sunt qui ante nos  
In mundo fuēre?  
Transeas ad supēros,  
Transeas ad infēros,  
Hos si vis vidēre. (bis)

Where are they who before us  
Were in the world?  
You may go up to the gods,  
You may cross into the underworld,  
If you wish to see them.

Vita nostra brevis est,  
Brevi finiētur:  
Venit mors velocīter,  
Rapit nos atrocīter,  
Nemīni parcētur. (bis)

Our life is brief,  
It will shortly end:  
Death comes quickly,  
Snatches us cruelly,  
It spares no one.

**Vivat Academia!  
Vivant professōres!  
Vivat membrum quodlibet,  
Vivant membra quaelibet,  
Semper sint in flore! (bis)**

Long live the academy!  
Long live the teachers!  
Long live each student!  
Long live all students!  
May they always flourish!

**Vivant omnes virgīnes,  
Gracīles, formōsae!  
Vivant et muliēres,  
Tenēre, amabīles,  
Bonae, laboriōsae. (bis)**

Long live all girls,  
Slender and beautiful!  
Long live wives as well,  
Tender, loveable,  
Good and productive.

**Vivat et Respublica  
Et qui illam regunt!  
Vivat nostra civitas,  
Maecenātum caritas,  
Qui nos hic protēgunt! (bis)**

Long live the state as well  
As they who rule it!  
Long live our city  
[And] the charity of benefactors  
Who protect us here!

Pereat tristitia,  
Pereant dolōres!  
Pereat diabōlus,  
Quivis antiburschius  
Atque irrisōres! (bis)

Let sadness perish,  
Let sorrows perish!  
Let the devil perish,  
Let [perish] whoever who is anti-student  
As well those who mock us!

*The most popular stanzas nowadays are typed in black type*



## LATIN PROVERBS AND QUOTATIONS

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Aes debitōrem leve, grave inimīcum facit                      | <i>If you want to keep a friend, never borrow, never lend</i> |
| 2. Amīcus certus in re incerta cernitur                          | <i>A friend in need is a friend indeed</i>                    |
| 3. Amor non est medicabilis herbis                               | <i>No herb will cure love</i>                                 |
| 4. Amor tussisque non celantur                                   | <i>Love and cough cannot be hidden</i>                        |
| 5. Aquila muscas non captat                                      | <i>An eagle doesn't catch the flies</i>                       |
| 6. Arte et humanitāte, labōre et scientia                        | <i>By art and humanity, by labor and knowledge</i>            |
| 7. Audiatur et altēra pars                                       | <i>Let's hear the opposite side!</i>                          |
| 8. Aurōra Musis amīca  | <i>He that will thrive, must rise at five</i>                 |
| 9. Bis dat qui cito dat  | <i>He gives twice who gives in a trice</i>                    |
| 10. Bona valetūdo melior est quam maxīmae divitiāe               | <i>Good health is above wealth</i>                            |
| 11. Cogitatiōnes posteriōres saepe sunt meliōres                 | <i>Second thoughts are the best</i>                           |
| 12. Cogito ergo sum  | <i>I think, therefore I am</i>                                |
| 13. Consuetūdo est altēra natūra                                 | <i>Custom is second nature</i>                                |
| 14. Copia non est inopia   | <i>Store is no sore</i>                                       |
| 15. Cum promisēras, facias                                       | <i>Promise is a debt</i>                                      |
| 16. De gustibus non est disputandum                              | <i>Tastes are not to be argued</i>                            |
| 17. De mortuis aut bene aut nihil                                | <i>Speak nothing but good of the dead</i>                     |
| 18. Diabōlus non est tam ater, ac pingitur                       | <i>The devil is not so black as he is painted</i>             |
| 19. Dictum — factum  | <i>Said and done</i>  |
| 20. Dies levat lucrum  | <i>Time heals most sorrows</i>                                |
| 21. Divīde et impēra   | <i>Divide and rule</i>  |
| 22. Domus propria domus optīma                                   | <i>My house is my castle. (East or west, home is best)</i>    |
| 23. Dum spiro spero  | <i>As long as I breathe, I hope</i>                           |
| 24. Duos qui lepōres sequitur, neutrum capit                     | <i>If you run after two hares, you will catch neither</i>     |
| 25. Dura lex sed lex   | <i>The law is the law and must be obeyed</i>                  |
| 26. Experientia est optīma magistra (=Usus est optīmus magister) | <i>Experience is the best teacher</i>                         |
| 27. Ebrietas est voluntaria insania                              | <i>Drunkenness is nothing but voluntary madness</i>           |
| 28. E cantu dignoscitur avis                                     | <i>A bird may be known by its song</i>                        |
| 29. Equi donāti dentes non sunt inspiciendi                      | <i>Don't look a gift horse in the mouth</i>                   |
| 30. Errāre humanum est   | <i>It's human to err</i>                                      |
| 31. Est avis in dextra melior quam quattuor extra                | <i>A bird in the hand is worth one hundred in flight</i>      |
| 32. Facīle dictu, difficīle factu                                | <i>Easier said than done</i>                                  |
| 33. Facta, non verba   | <i>Better to do well than to say well</i>                     |
| 34. Festīna lente  | <i>Make haste slowly</i>                                      |

35.	Finis corōnat opus	<i>All is well that ends well</i>
36.	Fronti nulla fides	<i>Appearances are deceitful</i>
37.	Fortes fortūna adjūvat	<i>Fortune favours the brave</i>
38.	Homīnes amplius oculis credunt quam aurībus	<i>A picture is worth a thousand words</i>
39.	Homo a se ortus	<i>A self-made man</i>
40.	Homo doctus in se divitias habet	<i>The wealth of the mind is the only true wealth</i>
41.	Homo est anīmal sociāle	<i>Man is by nature a political animal</i>
42.	Homo homīni lūpus est	<i>Man is a wolf to man</i>
43.	Homo propōnit, sed Deus dispōnit	<i>Man proposes but God disposes</i>
44.	Homo sum, humāni nihil a me alienum esse puto	<i>I am a man, I count nothing human alien to me</i>
45.	Ignorantia non est argumentum	<i>Lack of knowledge is no excuse (=Ignorance is no argument)</i>
46.	In medio stat virtus	<i>Virtue stands in the middle</i>
47.	Ira furor brevis est	<i>Anger is short madness</i>
48.	Labor et patientia omnia vincunt	<i>Diligence is the mother of success</i>
49.	Mala herba cito crescit	<i>Great weeds grow apace</i>
50.	Manus manum lavat	<i>One hand washes the other</i>
51.	Mare verbōrum, gutta rerum	<i>Great boast, small roast</i>
52.	Medīcus curat, natūra sanat	<i>The physician heals, nature convalesces</i>
53.	Mens sana in corpōre sano	<i>A healthy mind in a healthy body</i>
54.	Nemo sine vitio est	<i>No one is without a fault</i>
55.	Ne diffēras in crastīnum	<i>Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today</i>
56.	Ne noceas, si juvare non potes	<i>Do no harm, if you can not help</i>
57.	Nomen est omen	<i>The name is the sign</i>
58.	Ne Juppiter quidem omnībus placet	<i>He who pleased everybody died before he was born</i>
59.	Nihil volenti difficīle est	<i>Anything is possible if you wish hard enough</i>
60.	Non est fumus absque igne	<i>There is no smoke without fire</i>
61.	Non est via in medicīna sine lingua Latīna	<i>There is no way in medicine without Latin</i>
62.	Non scholae, sed vitae discīmus	<i>We learn not for school but for life</i>
63.	Nulla aetas ad discendum sera	<i>It is never too late to learn</i>
64.	Nulla regūla sine exceptione	<i>There is no rule without exception</i>
65.	Nulla dies sine linea	<i>Not a day without a line</i>
66.	Nullum malum sine aliquo bono	<i>No great loss without some small gain</i>
67.	Omnia fluunt, omnia mutantur	<i>Everything flows and everything changes</i>
68.	Omnia mea mecum porto	<i>All I have, I carry with me</i>
69.	O tempōra, o mores!	<i>What times! What customs!</i>
70.	Otium post negotium	<i>Work done, have your fun</i>

71. Pacta sunt servanda	<i>Agreements should be obeyed</i>
72. Paulātim summa petūntur	<i>Learn to creep before you leap</i>
73. Per aspēra ad astra	<i>Through the thorns (hard-ships) to the stars!</i>
74. Pigritia est mater vitiōrum	<i>Idleness is the mother of all evil</i>
75. Plenus venter non studet libenter	<i>A filled stomach is deaf to learning</i>
76. Potius sero quam nunquam	<i>Better is late than never</i>
77. Primum noli nocēre	<i>First, do no harm</i>
78. Principium dimidium totius	<i>Well begun is half done</i>
79. Procul ex oculis — procul ex mente	<i>Out of sight, out of mind</i>
80. Quem Deus perdere vult, dementat prius	<i>Whom God wishes to ruin, he first deprives him of reason</i>
81. Quidquid latet apparēbit	<i>What is done by night appears by day</i>
82. Quidquid Latīne dictum sit, altum vidētur	<i>Anything said in Latin sounds profound</i>
83. Qui non est nobiscum adversus nos est	<i>He that is not with us is against us</i>
84. Qui quaerit, repērit	<i>He will find who is searching</i>
85. Qui scribit, bis legit	<i>He who writes reads twice</i>
86. Qui seminat mala, metet mala	<i>The ill you do will rebound upon you</i>
87. Qui tacet consentire vidētur	<i>Silence gives consent</i>
88. Quod erat demonstrandum	<i>Which was to be proved</i>
89. Quod licet Jovi, non licet bovi	<i>What Jupiter is allowed to do cattle are not</i>
90. Quot capita, tot sententiae	<i>So many men, so many minds</i>
91. Radices litterarum amarae, fructus dulces	<i>Whatever is good to know is difficult to learn</i>
92. Repetitio est mater studiōrum	<i>Repeating is the mother of learning</i>
93. Saltare ad tibiam alicujus	<i>To dance after somebody's tune</i>
94. Scientia potentia est	<i>Knowledge is power</i>
95. Scio me nihil scire	<i>I know that I know nothing</i>
96. Sero venientibus ossa	<i>There is nothing left for the late-comers</i>
97. Sine ira et studio	<i>Without ill-will and without favor</i>
98. Sine labore non erit panis in ore	<i>No pains, no gains</i>
99. Si vis amari, ama!	<i>To be loved, love!</i>
100. Suae quisque fortunae faber est	<i>Each man is the maker of his own fortune</i>
101. Sudore et sanguine, opera et studio	<i>By blood, toil, tears and sweat</i>
102. Suis quaeque temporibus	<i>There is a time and place for everything</i>
103. Suum cuique	<i>To each his own</i>
104. Tamdiu discendum est, quamdiu discendum vivis	<i>Live and learn</i>
105. Tantum possumus, quantum scimus	<i>We can do as much as we know</i>
106. Temperantia est custos vitae	<i>Excesses destroy our powers</i>
107. Tempora mutantur et nos mutamur in illis	<i>The times change and we are changing with them</i>

108. Tempōris filia veritas	<i>Truth is a daughter of time</i>
109. Totus mundus agit histriōnem	<i>All the world's a stage</i>
110. Ubi concordia ibi victoria	<i>Where is the unity, there is the victory</i>
111. Umbram suam timēre	<i>He is afraid of his own shadow</i>
112. Una hirundo non facit ver	<i>One swallow makes no summer</i>
113. Ut salūtas, ita salutabēris	<i>As the call, so the echo</i>
114. Verba docent, exempla trahunt	<i>Words are teaching, examples are pulling</i>
115. Verum amīcum pecunia non parābis	<i>Money cannot buy friendship</i>
116. Vincuntur molli pectōra dura prece	<i>A word warmly said gives comfort even to a cat</i>
117. Vox popūli — vox Dei	<i>The voice of the people is the God's voice</i>

### MEDICAL PROFESSIONAL EXPRESSIONS

1. Abactus venter	<i>Artificially induced abortion</i>
2. Abalienatio mentis	<i>Insanity; mental derangement</i>
3. Ad aurem (ad aur.)	<i>At the ear</i>
4. Ad libitum (ad lib.)	<i>At pleasure, freely</i>
5. Ad usum externum (internum)	<i>To be taken externally (internally); for external (internal) use</i>
6. Alienatio partis	<i>Gangrene</i>
7. Alternis diēbus (alt. d.)	<i>Every other day</i>
8. Alternis horis (a. h.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
9. Ante meridiem (a. m.)	<i>Morning, before noon</i>
10. Ante mortem	<i>Before death</i>
11. Ante partum	<i>Before childbirth</i>
12. Ante prandium (a. p.)	<i>Before dinner</i>
13. Auris dextra (a. d.)	<i>Right ear</i>
14. Auris laevis (sinistra) (a. l., a. s.)	<i>Left ear</i>
15. Aures utraeque	<i>Both ears</i>
16. Bipāra	<i>A woman who has had born two children at separate births</i>
17. Bis in die (b. i. d.)	<i>Twice a day</i>
18. Compos mentis	<i>Of sound mind</i>
19. Dolōres vagi	<i>Wandering pains</i>
20. Facies hippocratica	<i>The appearance of a dying person described by Hippocrates: a pale or livid face with dull sunken eyes, pinched nose, hollow cheeks and temples, open mouth and dropped lower jaw</i>
21. Habitus aegrōti	<i>The general physical appearance of a diseased person; habit</i>

22.	Horrida cutis (=cutis anserina)	<i>Goose flesh</i>
23.	Impotentia coeundi	<i>Sexual impotence in the male</i>
24.	Impotentia erigendi	<i>Sexual impotence due to lack of the power of erection of the penis</i>
25.	Impotentia generandi	<i>Inability to reproduce</i>
26.	In articulo mortis	<i>At the instant of death</i>
27.	In extremis	<i>At the point of death</i>
28.	In situ	1. <i>In the normal, natural or original position</i> 2. <i>In a given place</i>
29.	Inter alia	<i>Among the other</i>
30.	In utero	<i>Within the uterus</i>
31.	In vacuo	<i>In a vacuum</i>
32.	In vitro	<i>Within a glass vessel; applied to changes taking place in the test-tube method of investigation</i>
33.	In vivo	<i>Within the living organism</i>
34.	Intra vitam	<i>During life</i>
35.	Locum tenens	<i>A medical practitioner who acts as deputy for another</i>
36.	Locus minoris resistentiae	<i>The place of least resistance (an organ or tissue most likely to be a particular disease)</i>
37.	Lusus naturae	<i>A teratism or other freak of nature</i>
38.	Malum aegypticum	<i>Diphtheria (literally — Egyptian evil)</i>
39.	Malum arteriarum senile	<i>Senile arteriosclerosis (literally — senile evil of arteries)</i>
40.	Malum caducum	<i>Epilepsy (literally — falling evil)</i>
41.	Malum venereum	<i>Syphilis (literally — venereal evil)</i>
42.	Minimum audibile	<i>The auditory threshold; the least sound that can be heard</i>
43.	Minimum cognoscibile	<i>The visibility threshold for recognizing shapes</i>
44.	Minimum sensibile	<i>The threshold of consciousness</i>
45.	Muscae volitantes	<i>The appearance in the fields of vision of variously shaped figures caused by defect of the vitreous humor (literally — flying flies)</i>
46.	Noli - me - tangere	<i>An old but colorful name for rodent ulcer (literally — do not touch me)</i>
47.	Non compos mentis	<i>A person who is not sufficiently sound of mind to manage his own affairs</i>
48.	Nostrum	<i>A quack remedy or a medicine the ingredients of which are kept secret</i>
49.	Nullipara	<i>A woman who has not given birth to a child</i>
50.	Oculus dexter (OD, o. d.)	<i>Right eye</i>
51.	Omnibus alternis horis (o. alt. hor.)	<i>Every other hour</i>
52.	Omni mane (o. m.)	<i>Every morning</i>

53.	Omni nocte (o. n.)	<i>Every night</i>
54.	Per rectum (p. r.)	<i>Per rectum (through the rectum)</i>
55.	Post meridiem (p. m.)	<i>Evening or afternoon</i>
56.	Post mortem	<i>After death</i>
57.	Post partum	<i>After childbirth</i>
58.	Post prandium	<i>After dinner</i>
59.	Potentia coeundi	<i>The capacity to have sexual intercourse</i>
60.	Potentia concipiendi	<i>The capacity to conceive</i>
61.	Potentia generandi	<i>The power to beget children</i>
62.	Primigravida	<i>One who is pregnant for the first time</i>
63.	Primipara	<i>A woman who has had one child</i>
64.	Prognosis anceps	<i>An uncertain prognosis</i>
65.	Prognosis fausta	<i>A good prognosis</i>
66.	Prognosis infausta	<i>An unfavorable prognosis</i>
67.	Prognosis quoad vitam	<i>An opinion as to whether the patient will live</i>
68.	Pro ratione aetatis p. r. aet.)	<i>According to age</i>
69.	Pro re nata (p. r. n.)	<i>Occasionally, when required</i>
70.	Pubertas plena	<i>The attainment of full sexual maturity</i>
71.	Pubertas praecox	<i>Puberty occurring at an abnormally early age</i>
72.	Quantum libet (=quantum placet)	<i>As much as you please</i>
73.	Quaqua hora (q. q. h.)	<i>Every hour</i>
74.	Quater in die (q. i. d.)	<i>Four times a day</i>
75.	Secundigravida	<i>A woman who is pregnant for the second time</i>
76.	Secundipara	<i>A woman who has had 2 children, in two different pregnancies</i>
77.	Status asthmaticus	<i>A severe and continuous attack of asthma in which there is marked dyspnoea and finally exhaustion and collapse</i>
78.	Status convulsivus sive epilepticus	<i>Repeated and prolonged epileptic seizures without recovery of consciousness between attacks</i>
79.	Status praesens	<i>The present condition</i>
80.	Ter de die (t. d. d.)	<i>Thrice a day</i>
81.	Unipara	<i>A woman who has given birth once only</i>
82.	Vix conservatrix	<i>The innate strength of an organism enabling it to withstand disease</i>
83.	Vix medicatrix naturae	<i>The natural ability of the organism to prevail over disease without external assistance</i>
84.	Vis vitae (vitālis)	<i>The life force</i>

## LITERATURE

1. *Англо-русский* медицинский словарь : более 90 000 терминов / сост. : И. Ю. Марковина, Е. В. Бабченко, З. К. Максимова и др.]. М.: Медицинское информационное агенство, 2008. 896 с.
2. *Волмянская, О. А.* Англо-русский словарь для специалистов-медиков / О. А. Волмянская. Минск : Асар, 2000. 304 с.
3. *Капитула, Л. С.* Латинский язык с основами медицинской терминологии : учеб. пособие / Л. С. Капитула. 2-е изд. Минск : БГМУ, 2003. 241 с.
4. *Международная анатомическая номенклатура* (с официальным списком русских эквивалентов) / под ред. Л. Л. Колесникова. М : Медицина, 2003. 424 с.
5. *Русско-англо-латинский* словарь крылатых слов и выражений / сост. А. С. Альбов. М. : АСТ ; СПб. : Сова, 2006. 606 с.
6. *Цисык, А. З.* Латинский язык : учеб. для студ. вузов / А. З. Цисык. Минск : ТетраСистемс, 2006. 448 с.
7. *Arnaudov, G.* Terminologia medica polyglotta. Медицинская терминология на пяти языках / G. Arnaudov. София : Медицина и физкультура, 1979. 943 с.
8. *Butterworths Medical Dictionary* 2nd ed. London, Boston, Sydney, Wellington, Durban, Toronto : Butterworth, 1979. 1942 p.
9. *Кондратьев, Д. К.* Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology for Medical Students / Д. К. Кондратьев, О. Е. Вылегжанина, Ю. В. Князева. Гродно : ГрГМУ, 2005. 250 с.
10. *Stadman's Medical Dictionary*. 25th ed. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Sydney : Williams and Wilkins, 1989. 1751 p.

## CONTENTS

Preface.....	3
Introduction to the subject.....	4
<b>Part I. PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION.....</b>	<b>7</b>
Lesson 1. THE LATIN ALPHABET. THE PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS, CONSONANTS AND LETTER COMBINATIONS .....	7
§ 1. Latin alphabet.....	7
§ 2. Division of Latin sounds .....	8
§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels .....	8
§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowel combination .....	8
§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants .....	9
§ 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations .....	10
§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations.....	11
§ 8. Exercises .....	11
Lesson 2. ACCENT RULES.....	12
§ 9. Accent in the words consisting of two syllables .....	12
§10. Accent in polysyllabic words. Length and brevity of the second end syllable.....	12
§ 11. Long suffixes.....	13
§ 12. Short suffixes .....	13
§ 13. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology .....	14
§ 14. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel is not a part of a long or a short suffix .....	14
§ 15. Some rules of syllable length determination.....	14
§ 16. The rules of syllable brevity.....	15
§ 17. Exercises .....	15
<b>Part II. ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY .....</b>	<b>17</b>
Lesson 3. THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUN AND ITS GRAMMAR CATEGORIES .....	17
§ 18. The Latin terminology in Anatomy and its structure.....	17
§ 19. Grammar categories of noun.....	18
§ 20. Dictionary form of nouns.....	18
§ 21. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it.....	19
§ 22. Description of declensions .....	19
§ 23. Exercises .....	20
§ 24. Vocabulary to lesson 3 .....	21
Lesson 4. ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT .....	23
§ 25. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin .....	23
§ 26. 1st group of adjectives .....	23
§ 27. 2nd group of adjectives.....	24



§ 28. Adjective and noun agreement .....	25
§ 29. Exercises.....	26
§ 30. Vocabulary to lesson 4 .....	27
Lesson 5. DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES IN ANATOMICAL TERMS .....	30
§ 31. Introductory remarks to the topic .....	30
§ 32. The comparative degree .....	30
§ 33. Comparative forms in anatomical terminology.....	31
§ 34. The superlative degree.....	32
§ 35. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives magnus, a, um and parvus, a, um in Latin anatomical terminology.....	32
§ 36. Exercises.....	34
§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 5 .....	35
Lesson 6. THE MASCULINE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS. NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS .....	37
§ 38. Masculine names in the third declension from the point of view of their endings in the Nominative and the Genitive .....	37
§ 39. Some explanations to the exceptions presented in the table.....	37
§ 40. Latin names of muscles performing different functions.....	38
§ 41. Exercises.....	39
§ 42. Vocabulary to lesson 6 .....	39
Lesson 7. FEMININE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS.....	41
§ 43. Systematization of the feminine names in the third declension .....	41
§ 44. Exercises.....	42
§ 45. Vocabulary to lesson 7 .....	42
Lesson 8. NEUTRAL GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS .....	44
§ 46. Systematization of the neutral names of the third declension .....	44
§ 47. Some explanations on the nouns having similar endings but different gender and declension .....	45
§ 48. Exercises.....	45
§ 49. Vocabulary to lesson 8 .....	46
Lesson 9. NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.....	48
§ 50. Nominative plural endings of nouns and adjectives.....	48
§ 51. Abbreviations of Nominative plural forms in anatomical terms .....	49
§ 52. Exercises.....	49
§ 53. Vocabulary to lesson 9 .....	50
Lesson 10. GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES .....	51
§ 54. Genitive plural endings of nouns and adjectives .....	51
§ 55. Exercises.....	53

§ 56. Vocabulary to lesson 10.....	53
Lesson 11. ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE .....	54
§ 57. Accusative singular and plural endings .....	54
§ 58. Prepositions used with the Accusative.....	55
§ 59. Exercises .....	56
§ 60. Vocabulary to lesson 11 .....	56
Lesson 12. ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE .....	58
§ 61. Ablative and its formation.....	58
§ 62. Prepositions with the Ablative .....	59
§ 63. Exercises .....	59
§ 64. Vocabulary to lesson 12.....	60
Lesson 13. PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY .....	61
§ 65. Prefixation in the word building .....	61
§ 66. Prefixes in anatomical terminology .....	61
§ 67. Greek and Latin numerals as prefixes.....	63
§ 68. Exercises .....	63
§ 69. Vocabulary to lesson 14.....	64
§ 70. Model (Pattern) of the final test in anatomical terminology.....	66
Latin-english vocabulary.....	67
English-latin vocabulary .....	73
<b>Part III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY .....</b>	<b>78</b>
Lesson 14. INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY.....	78
§ 71. General information on Latin pharmaceutical terminology.....	78
§ 72. The drug form names .....	79
§ 73 Components of medical plants.....	80
§ 74. Medicinal plants in pharmaceutical terms .....	80
§ 75. The morphological structure of one-word Latin drug names .....	81
§ 76 Some rules of building multiword pharmaceutical terms .....	82
§ 77. Exercises .....	82
§ 78. Vocabulary to lesson 14.....	83
Lesson 15. LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION. STANDARD VERB FORMS INDICATING ORDER AND INSTRUCTIONS IN MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION. GENERAL RULES OF MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION.....	84
§ 79. Current use of Latin in medical prescription .....	84
§ 80. The Imperative verb forms used in a simple medical prescription.....	85

§ 81. The Conjunctive forms in medical prescription .....	86
§ 82. The structure of a complex medical prescription .....	86
§ 83. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in the medical prescription .....	87
§ 84. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription .....	87
§ 85. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects .....	88
§ 86. Exercises .....	88
§ 87. Vocabulary to lesson 15 .....	89
Lesson 16. THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF SOME PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN THE FIRST LINE OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION .....	91
§ 88. General information on the use of the Accusative of the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription .....	91
§ 89. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative form .....	92
§ 90. The prescription of drops in the Accusative form .....	92
§ 91. The prescription of ophthalmic films .....	93
§ 92. The prescription of medical sponges .....	93
§ 93. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case .....	94
§ 94. The prescription of aerosols in the Accusative case .....	94
§ 95. Morphological roots .....	95
§ 96. Exercises .....	95
§ 97. Vocabulary to lesson 16 .....	96
Lesson 17. LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS, OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES .....	98
§ 98. Latin names of chemical elements .....	98
§ 99. Latin names of acids .....	99
§ 100. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides .....	100
§ 101. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information .....	100
§ 102. Exercises .....	101
§ 103. Vocabulary to lesson 17 .....	102
Lesson 18. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS ON THE LABELS OF DRUG NAMES AND IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS .....	105
§ 104. Latin names of salts, whose anions include oxygen .....	105
§ 105. Latin names of salts, whose anions do not contain oxygen .....	105
§ 106. Anion names of basic salts .....	106
§ 107. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts .....	106
§ 108. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information .....	106
§ 109. Exercises .....	107
§ 110. Vocabulary to lesson 18 .....	108
§ 111. Model (Pattern) of the final test in pharmaceutical terminology .....	111
Latin-english vocabulary .....	112
English-latin vocabulary .....	115

<b>Part IV. CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY</b> .....	119
Lesson 19. INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY. ONE-WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE. INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD BUILDING. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS .....	119
§ 112. General remarks on Latin clinical terminology .....	119
§ 113. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms .....	119
§ 114. Some remarks on the word stressing in clinical names .....	121
§ 115. Initial and final root elements .....	121
§ 116. The names of the main branches of clinical medicine .....	122
§ 117. Names of medical specialists .....	122
§ 118. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English .....	123
§ 119. The names of medical examinations and methods of treatment .....	123
§ 120. Table of initial root elements .....	124
§ 121. Table of final root elements .....	125
§ 122. Exercises .....	125
§ 123. Vocabulary to lesson 19 .....	126
Lesson 20. ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS .....	128
§ 124. One-word names of functional disorders .....	128
§ 125. One-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions .....	129
§ 126. Initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents .....	130
§ 127. Table of final root elements .....	131
§ 128. Exercises .....	131
§ 129. Vocabulary to lesson 20 .....	132
Lesson 21. NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES .....	135
§ 130. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions .....	135
§ 131. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures .....	136
§ 132. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures .....	136
§ 133. Table of initial root elements .....	137
§ 134. Table of final roots .....	138
§ 135. Exercises .....	138
§ 136. Vocabulary to lesson 21 .....	139
Lesson 22. NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. NAMES OF ABNORMALITIES IN THE STATES OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS .....	142
§ 137. Names of inflammatory conditions .....	142
§ 138. Names of morbid conditions of physiological fluids .....	143
§ 139. Table of initial roots .....	144

§ 140. Table of final roots .....	145
§ 141. Exercises.....	145
§ 142. Vocabulary to lesson 22 .....	146
Lesson 23. ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS .....	149
§ 143. Names of abnormal adhesions and fissures.....	149
§ 144. Names of pathological cavities.....	150
§ 145. Names of tumors.....	150
§ 146. Names of concretions .....	151
§ 147. Names of abnormal hardening and softening of the tissues.....	152
§ 148. Table of initial roots .....	152
§ 149. Table of final roots .....	153
§ 150. Exercises.....	153
§ 151. Vocabulary to lesson 23 .....	154
Lesson 24. NAMES OF DEFORMATIONS OF TISSUE CAUSED BY EXOGENOUS FACTORS. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS .....	157
§ 152. General names of tissue deformations caused by different exogenous factors .....	157
§ 153. Names of surgical operations .....	158
§ 154. Prefixes widely used in surgical names.....	158
§ 155. Table of initial roots .....	159
§ 156. Table of final roots .....	160
§ 157. Exercises.....	160
§ 158. Vocabulary to lesson 24 .....	161
Lesson 25. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 1 .....	165
§ 159. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms.....	165
§ 160. Exercises.....	166
§ 161. Vocabulary to lesson 25 .....	166
Lesson 26. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 2 .....	168
§ 162. Exercises.....	168
§ 163. Vocabularies to lesson 26.....	169
Lesson 27. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 3 .....	171
§ 164. Exercises.....	171
§ 165. Vocabulary to lesson 27 .....	171
§ 166. Model (Pattern) of the final test in clinical terminology .....	173
Latin-english vocabulary .....	174
English-latin vocabulary.....	184
The international students' anthem "Gaudeamus" .....	199
Latin proverbs and quotations .....	200
Medical professional impressions .....	203
Literature .....	206